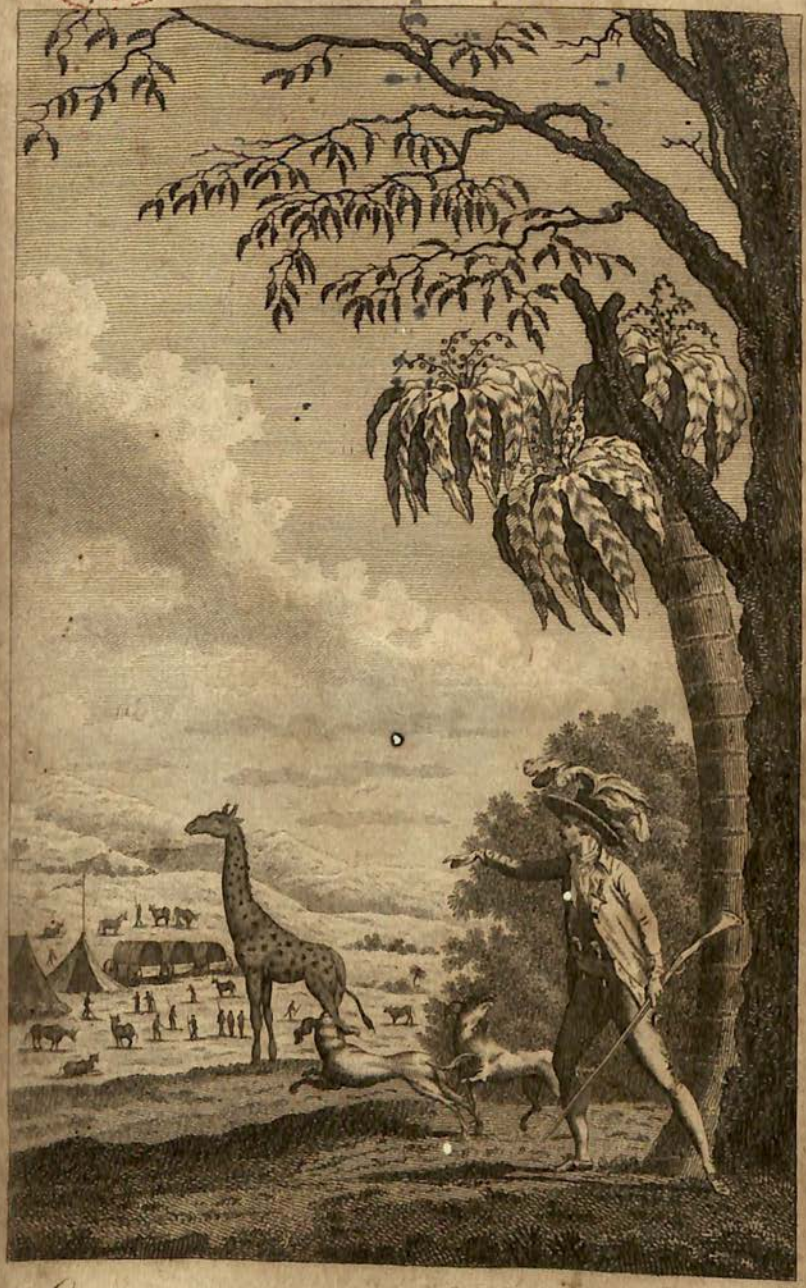
00085932

THE
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY
Town Hall, Bombay.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 15 June, 2016

ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH

FRONTISPIECE.



*Encampment among the Great Namaquas.*

# TRAVELS

FROM THE

*CAPE of GOOD-HOPE,*

INTO THE

## INTERIOR PARTS OF AFRICA,

INCLUDING MANY

## INTERESTING ANECDOTES,

WITH ELEGANT PLATES,

Descriptive of the Country and Inhabitants;

85932 a2

INSCRIBED BY PERMISSION TO

HIS GRACE THE DUKE OF MONTAGU,

---

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH OF

*MONSIEUR VAILLANT.*

---

IN TWO VOLUMES.

---

VOL. II.

---

*LONDON:*

PRINTED FOR WILLIAM LANE, LEADENHALL-STREET.

M DCC XC.

2 f 14

00085932

# TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

# AFRICA.

## CHAPTER I.

ACCOUNT OF THE GONAQUAIS, THEIR ORIGIN, &c.—MESSENGERS FROM THEIR CHIEF—THE AUTHOR PREPARES TO VISIT HIM.— PECULIARITY OF HIS DRESS DESCRIBED.

IN the thirty-ſix hours that I paſſed among the *Gonaquais*, I had time to make ſome uſeful obſervations on their manners and ſpeech: I remarked that they clucked with their tongues like the other *Hottentots*, (I will hereafter explain the

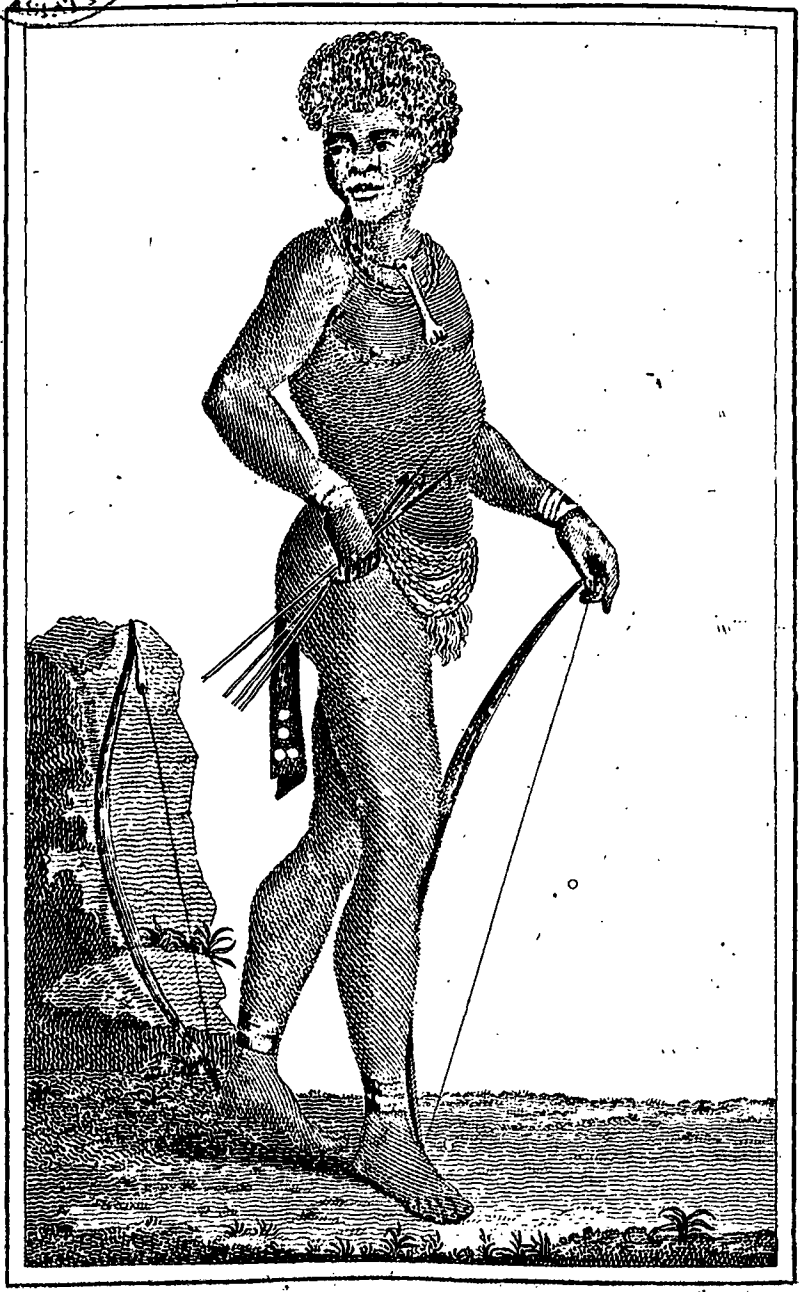
manner of this clucking, and how it varies), and, though their language is very ſimilar, my people could not always underſtand them.

They alſo differed from my *Hottentots* by the darkneſs of their complexions; their noſes were not ſo flat; they were much taller and better proportioned; and in a word, had a more agreeable appearance and deportment. The plates of *Narina* and the young *Gonaquais*, faithfully taken, may give ſome idea of their perſons.

When they accoſt any one they preſent their hand, ſaying *Tabe* (I ſalute you). This word and ceremony is alſo uſed among the *Caffres*, but not among thoſe properly called *Hottentots*.

The affinity of cuſtoms, manners, and diſpoſitions, the neighbourhood of *Caffraria*, and the inſight that I afterwards received,

ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY
LIBRARY
OF THE
BOMBAY
BRANCH
OF THE



A Gonaquais Hottentot

received, convinced me that the *Hoords* of the *Gonaquais*, which reſemble equally the *Caffres* and *Hottentots* muſt have been originally the produce of thoſe two nations.

The dreſs of the *Gonaquais* men, though better contrived and arranged, has the ſame form with that of the *Hottentots*, but as the firſt are of a more elevated ſtature, it is not with the ſkins of ſheep, but with thoſe of calves that they make their cloaks, which are all called *Kroſes*. Some among them wear on their neck a bit of ivory or very white ſheep's bone, which, contraſted with the colour of their ſkins, has a *good* effect.

When the heat is exceſſive, they take off all their covering but their *jackals*, which is a piece of ſkin of the animal ſo named, and hangs from their girdles.

The women take a great deal more trouble than the men in regard to dreſs; they alſo wear the *Kros*, but their aprons are larger, and wrought with a good deal of ſkill; in very hot weather they only wear this laſt habiliment, and a ſkin that deſcends from the loins to the calf of their legs.

Young girls, until nine years old, go abſolutely naked; after that age they wear an apron.

It was night when the *Hottentot* that I ſent with *Haabas* returned from the *Hoord*; he was accompanied by two *Gonaquais*, who brought me a fat ox, which their chief entreated me to accept. *Narina*, to remind me of my promiſe, ſent me a baſket of goat's milk, which ſhe knew I was very fond of. Her ſiſter had ſeen the preſents ſhe had received, and regretted that ſhe had not likewiſe viſited my camp: this I was

was told by one of the meſſengers of *Haabas*, who likewiſe brought the thanks of her mother for the preſent I had ſent her. With the ox I alſo received ſome ſheep, I regaled the meſſengers with tobacco and brandy, one of them reſembled *Narina*, I thought it was her brother, but he proved to be only her couſin: his features were at once manly and pleaſing, his height and form unexceptionable, he was altogether the handſomeſt ſavage I had ever ſeen; and from him I received more information than even from *Haabas*; he told me that before the war with the *Caffres*, their *Hoord* contained but one family, of which the grandfather of *Narina* was the laſt chief. After his death it had long remained without a commander, but war having broke out, the *Hoord* of *Haabas*, (who dwelt on the borders of a river near the ſeat of action) came and joined them. At firſt the arrival of *Haabas* had occaſioned a great deal

of diſcontent, as the *Hoord* would not acknowledge him, ſaying they had a right to chuſe a chief, and it was not juſt a new comer ſhould exact obedience in a *Hoord* that had only permitted his ſettlement among them: this difference of opinion cauſed long quarrels, and ſome bloodſhed; at length the common intereſt having obliged them to join againſt a precipitate attack of the *Caffres*, the prudent and courageous conduct of *Haabas* (who had repulſed the enemy) made them unanimouſly elect him chief of both *Hoords*, and now, by their intermarriages and ſtrict friendſhip, it was conſidered but as one.

My brandy began to operate on the young *Gonaquais*, whoſe details were inexhauſtible; and it was one o'clock before I retired to reſt; recommending to my people to follow my example, as I intended going out to ſhoot birds at day break.

I roſe

I roſe with the ſun, the couſin of *Narina* aſked leave to follow me, it was ſuch a pleaſure, as he expreſſed it, to ſee me fire my gun, which was to him a phœnomenon he could not acccount for; I gave him my carbine to carry, as we might chance to meet ſome larger game.

The curioſity of *Amiroo* (that being his name) was not eaſily ſatisfied, we drew near to a vulture that had ſettled on the point of a rock, my firſt ſhot wounded, the ſecond killed it; the comrades of *Amiroo* on their return to the *Hoord* had told him, I could fire a number of times together, but judging of my arms by his, he could not conceive it poſſible that the ſame arrow ſhould wound twice, he was ſtrangely ſurpriſed to hear the ſecond report, and to ſee the bird dead; how much did he wiſh to poſſeſs ſuch a weapon, to uſe in battle againſt the *Caffres!* His manner, his voice, in expreſſing this

wiſh, convinced me that if man is not the ſtrongeſt, he is the nobleſt, and moſt courageous of creatures. He aſked me why the coloniſts had not guns? The queſtion though pertinent, was unanſwerable. Before my arrival they had not even ſeen any; and in the countries I travelled through, at a diſtance from the Cape, it was ſpoke of as a curiſioty without parallel. In my converſation with *Amiroo* I found he thought I could fire my piece at pleaſure, having no idea of its requiring a charge; and the queſtion he afterwards put, convinced me of this: a kite flew over our heads, I fired my two charges, the bird only took a round, and continued his way. *Amiroo* aſked me why I did not fire until I killed it? I anſwered, the bird was too common, and I had no inclination to it, beſides the noiſe might frighten others which I wiſhed to kill; by this turn I avoided explaining what I thought it prudent he ſhould ever be ignorant of. I

alſo

alſo augmented the idea of ſuperiority that ſavages entertain of an European.

Among a number of other birds, I ſhot a cuckow of a ſpecies entirely unknown: there was nothing remarkable in his plumage, being almoſt all over of a dark brown; its notes are compoſed of a number of ſounds differently accented, and may be heard at a great diſtance. And as it ſings for whole hours without interruption, it betrays itſelf to the ſportſmen: I have called it *Criard* in my Ornithology.

*Amiroo* ſeeing me ſhoot the ſmall birds ſo eaſily, deſired I would lend him my gun to try his ſkill; but it did not enter into my plan of politics to give him uſeful leſſons in that ſcience. Without wanting to paſs for a conjuror, I wiſhed to perſuade him by his own experience, that there was an enormous difference between a European and a *Hottentot*; I therefore charged

charged my gun with powder only, and let him fire as often as he pleaſed. He was out of patience to ſee nothing fall; had I put in ſhot he would not have been more content, for the fear of burning his face made him turn away his head when he pulled the trigger: though I ſuppoſed him very aukward, yet I left nothing to chance; for had he killed a ſingle bird, my ſuperiority would have been much leſſened, not only in his own opinion, but alſo in that of the whole *Hoord*; and if their opinion did not protect my perſon, it at leaſt gratified my ſelf-love. As we returned to our camp we met with a number of *Bubales*, I killed one with my carbine, it appeared ſtrange to my companion that at only fifteen paces, he could not kill a ſingle bird; he meaſured with aſtoniſhment the diſtance between us and the *Bubale*, his reflections gave his features an air of ſorrow, I conſidered him with pity; he was not aware how intereſting

was

was that ſimplicity that perſuaded him of his inferiority to his fellow creature: long mayeſt thou keep thy happy ignorance, and may I be the laſt ſtranger who, with daring ſtep, ſhall tread thy land and profane thy ſolitude.

We covered the *Bubale* with branches, and on our return ſent a horſe and my *Hottentot* to fetch it.

To amuſe *Amiroo* and his comrade, I employed the reſt of the day in preparing my birds. I detained them that night, telling them the day following they ſhould conduct me to their *Hoord*; this intelligence occaſioned the moſt lively joy, and the evening paſſed away gaily; we drank tea and milk before a good fire, I had one of the ſheep killed that *Haabas* had ſent me, the ſupper was chearful. Muſic (the jew's-harp) was not forgotten, I gave two

two to my viſitors, who had ſeen ſome I had given to thoſe of the *Hoord* that had before viſited me, they had much wiſhed for them but dared not aſk me, in gratifying their wiſhes I augmented the friendſhip they entertained for me.

The hour of reſt arrived, I informed all my people of the journey on the morrow, ordering *Klaas* to have my horſes ready at day-break.

On my riſing I found the companion of *Amiroo* was gone to inform *Haabas* of my intended viſit. The population of the immenſe deſerts of Africa muſt not be calculated by the innumerable quantities of blacks that ſwarm the weſt and border the ocean from the Canaries on the kingdom of Morocco, to the environs of the Cape of Good Hope, there is certainly no proportion. Notwithſtanding, the barbarous navigators of Europe (by a commerce

merce approved by a ſmall number, deteſted by the greater) have, by ſpecious allurements, ſeduced the negroes to give up their priſoners, or thoſe in their power; and taught them in proportion to their want, to become perfidious and inhuman. The chief has ſold his ſubjects, the parents their children, and nature, as if to furniſh them with the means for this unnatural traffic, has rendered them fruitful.

But this execrable trade is yet unknown in the interior of the continent, the deſert is ſtrictly the deſert, and it is only at diſtances from each other, that we find ſcattered ſettlements, the people few, living on the fruits of the earth and the produce of their cattle, and ever a long way from one *Hoord* to another. The heat of the climate, the ſterility of the ſoil, the ſcarcity of water, mountains almoſt impaſſable, ſavage beaſts to cope with, or what

what is poſſibly worſe, the phlegmatic temperament of this people may be a ſufficient reaſon why a *Hottentot* is ſeldom or never the father of ſix children.

The country of the *Gonaquais* which I was now exploring, might reckon about three thouſand people, on an extent of thirty or forty leagues, out of which the *Hoord* of *Haabas* (the moſt conſiderable in the country) contained four hundred.

They were not here degenerate and miſerable Hottentots like thoſe who languiſh in the neighbourhood of the Cape, deſpiſing and deſpiſed, remembering of their origin but the empty name; and enjoying, at the price of their liberty, a little peace bought dearly at the expence of exceſſive labour.

But here I could contemplate a people brave and free, poſſeſſing only independence,

ence, yielding to the impulſe of their natures, which is truly philanthropic and magnanimous.

As I would not preſent myſelf to this reſpectable nation like a tired huntſman, who worn by hunger and fatigue is obliged to ſtop at the firſt place he can find; in in the morning I dreſſed myſelf with great care, powdering my hair, and combing my beard to make it ſet in the beſt manner poſſible: it was not a ridiculous whim, as has been ſaid, that had made me let it grow for a year, (for though negligent of my perſon, exact cleanlineſs was my greateſt pleaſure), the project was conceived before I left the Cape. As I was well informed of the wars between the *Caffres* and coloniſts it was neceſſary that I ſhould have the appearance of an entire ſtranger, who viſited this country from curioſity, without any connection with the coloniſts. My plan ſucceeded, and in all the *Hoords* I viſited,

I viſited, and was received as a ſuperior being. The invincible diſlike I had to tobacco and brandy, ſo much prized by the coloniſts and ſavages, encreaſed their aſtoniſhment. The knowledge of this favourable idea gave me an aſſurance, nay, even inſpired me with a degree of intrepidity which was of the greateſt utility, theſe were advantages which other travellers (from not having uſed the ſame precautions) have not enjoyed. I went every where without fear, and might have croſſed the centre of Africa into Barbary without inquietude, had not the ſoil forbidden it.

But the extremes of hunger and thirſt, will even be unſurmountable barriers to ſuch a hazardous expedition; for in a journey of that length, and where a number of deſert wilds form a principal part, it muſt be abſolutely neceſſary to make a large proviſion; how this is to be done (in

(in countries whereof ſome are totally, and others almoſt unknown) is a queſtion at preſent as impenetrable as theſe unexplored regions.

But, to return to my dreſs; among other ſuits, I had one of dark brown with diamond-cut ſteel buttons, this I choſe for my viſiting habit, for the ſun-beams reflecting on my buttons, would make me an object of admiration to the ſavages; under this I put a white waiſtcoat, and in lieu of boots a pair of nankeen trouſers; I happened to have a pair of European ſhoes in my wardrobe, thoſe I likewiſe put on, not forgetting my large ſilver buckles, which by chance were very ſparkling; I ardently wiſhed for a gold-laced hat, but wiſhes were in vain; my trouſers rendered my brilliant knee-buckles uſeleſs, but I was reſolved they ſhould not be loſt, ſo made them up into a kind of claſp for my hat, which was decorated with an elegant plume of oſtrich feathers.

The accoutrements of my horſe, did not anſwer to the ornaments of his maſter; the panther ſkin, that would have been thought beautiful in France, was nothing in the eyes of a ſavage; had he been decorated with even the worſt of thoſe ſcarlet houſings that cover the backs of the horſes which paſs weekly from Paris to Poiſſy, what an object would he have been for admiration!

I had ordered my faithful *Klaas* to attend me on horſe-back, he had likewiſe adorned himſelf in the beſt manner he could; but wiſhing to diſtinguiſh him, I gave him an old pair of red breeches, which were put on with an air of vanity, that ſhewed the importance he received from this decoration.

# CHAPTER II.

SETS OUT ON HIS VISIT—RECEPTION BY THE CHIEF—ACCOMPANIES HIM TO VIEW THE KRAAL—HUMANE TREATMENT OF THE AGED—REMARKABLE ACCOUNT OF A DISEASED GONAQUAIS—DISTRIBUTES PRESENTS—RETURNS TO THE CAMP.

EVERY thing being ready for our departure, I ordered our two huntſmen to go before with their guns, to inform the *Hoord* of my coming; and as ſoon as I had breakfaſted ſet out myſelf; I ſtuck my poignard in my button-hole, a pair of piſtols in my girdle, another in my ſaddle, with my double barreled gun;

*Klaas*, with the carbine, followed me, four of my dogs in his train, and after him four of his fellows eſcorting another that carried a box, which contained two red handkerchiefs, ſome braſs rings, knives, and trinkets, which I intended to preſent the *Hoord* with. *Amiroo* marched at the head of our cavalcade to ſhew us the way, we travelled by the river ſide for near an hour, after which we quitted it. *Amiroo* conducted us between two high mountains, in a narrow paſs, whoſe length and windings could not be leſs than two leagues; the end of this defile brought us again within ſix paces of the river. The country lay open before us, and from this place our guide, pointing with his finger, ſhewed me a little riſe on which I ſaw a *Kraal*; *Amiroo* informed me it was that of *Haabas*. We were now at a ſhort diſtance from it; I had found the way longer than I expected, for we had been three hours on the road.

When

When I was within two hundred paces I fired my piece, directing four of my men to do the ſame, the two I had ſent before anſwered the ſalute; this was to all the *Hoord* the ſignal for exclamations of joy. I ſhall not attempt to make any reflections on this ſcene, the feeling reader will partake the emotion it cauſed in my heart, and will prefer a ſimple and true to an elaborate recital. Every one came out of their huts, and aſſembled in crowds; but as I drew nearer, the women, girls, and children diſappeared, and the men were left alone with their chief, who advanced to meet me. I diſmounted, ſaying *Tabe, Tabe*, to the good old man, at the ſame time taking his hand; he anſwered my ſalute, with a warmth which ſpoke the effuſions of a grateful heart, which felt itſelf touched with a mark of honour he knew himſelf the object of.

I went through this ceremony with

each of them, except that the others from reſpect omitted the ſhake of the hand, inſtead of which they made a motion with the head, pronouncing the word *Tabe*, accompanied with a more ſenſible clucking of the tongue.

Every one examined me with the greateſt attention, the moſt minute parts of my dreſs did not eſcape their obſervation; even *Haabas* (who had never ſeen me but in my common hunting dreſs) appeared aſtoniſhed at the elegance of my decorations; he treated me with a more marked diſtinction, and ſpoke with a greater air of reſpect than uſual. I had left my horſe under the ſhade of a great tree, where we had been met by *Haabas*; I only ſtopped a minute to refreſh myſelf, being impatient to contemplate this intereſting *Hoord*, and I walked accompanied by the whole community. As I paſſed by the huts, which, like thoſe of the *Hottentots*, have

but

but one opening, and that very low, the miſtreſs of each viewed me at a diſtance, but diſappeared on my nearer approach; I was obliged to ſtoop, in order to inſpect the inſide of the huts, and it was truly laughable to ſee their black faces perfectly immoveable in the moſt obſcure part of the dwelling.

After ſome little time they grew rather more familiar, and at length came round me, preſenting me with milk; *Narina* was not among the number, I aſked for her, they ran to ſeek her; ſhe arrived carrying a baſket of goat's milk which ſhe offered me with earneſtneſs; I took her's in preference, as well for the natural graces with which ſhe accompanied the gift, as for the extreme cleanlineſs of the veſſel, none of the others being comparable in that point.

All the women were decorated with

their beſt ornaments, their faces were greaſed and painted in a hundred different forms, which plainly ſhewed the preparations that had been made in the *Hoord* for my arrival.

*Narina* likewiſe wore the preſent I had made her; but what was my ſurpriſe, when I ſaw ſhe had not followed the example of her companions, but had omitted the greaſe and painting; ſhe knew it was diſagreeable to me, and though the omiſſion muſt have given her concern, ſhe deprived herſelf of it; ſhe preſented her ſiſter tome, who was really pretty; but whether partiality made me blind, or the ſmell of the greaſe diſguſted me, I thought her not comparable to *Narina*.

*Haabas* introduced me to his wife, ſhe was not diſtinguiſhable from the others, and I found here, as is ſometimes found in other places, that the ſuperior's lady (ſo far from

from excelling the reſt) was both old and ugly; but I was a courtier, and therefore preſented her with a red handkerchief, which ſhe received without ceremony, tying it immediately about her head, to this preſent I added a knife and a ſteel: but wiſhing to know her taſte, and willing to ſee a female ſavage embarraſſed in her choice of ornaments, I ſpread my whole pack of beads before her, entreating her to chooſe thoſe ſhe liked beſt. I did not enjoy the ſatisfaction I promiſed myſelf; for without heſitation ſhe ſeized on the white and red beads, the other ſhe ſaid were not to her liking, reſembling too much the colour of her ſkin. I have ever remarked that ſavages in general hold black and blue in little eſtimation. I gave her likewiſe ſome large braſs wire for two pair of braceſets, this laſt article ſhe appeared to hold in the higheſt eſtimation.

Theſe

Theſe preſents were not ſeen without envy by the other women, who raiſed their hands with ecſtacy, declaring with a loud voice their admiration, and that the ſpouſe of *Haabas* was the happieſt of women, and the richeſt ever ſeen in the country of the *Gonaquais*.

I now diſtributed the remainder of my beads, and I truly own that I took care the young and handſome ſhould have the beſt ſhare. I gave to the men knives, ſteels, and ſome tobacco; my intention in viſiting this *Hoord* was, that all the families compoſing it, ſhould enjoy my liberality, and for that purpoſe, the quantity I brought was not inconſiderable. *Haabas* intreated me, in the name of ſeveral old men who were unable to quit their huts, to accompany him in paying them a viſit, and I immediately conſented to this propoſal.

They

They were all waited on by children, from eight to ten years old, who gave them their food; in fine, they had all thoſe attentions, which age and weakneſs require.

This reſpectful inſtitution among a ſavage people, affected me ſtrongly, and I expreſſed my ſatisfaction to my conductor.

The greater part of theſe old men were confined by extreme age, and not by the infirmities that are the natural appendages of exceſs in more civilized countries: I remarked with ſurprize, that their hair was not turned grey. I was conducted after this into a hut at a diſtance from the reſt, it contained a miſerable wretch, covered with ſores from head to foot. I had ſtooped at the entrance, in order to look in, but an infectious ſmell made me draw back with horror; the poor creature

ture had lain here above a year without any perſon daring to approach him, ſo much did they fear the communication of his malady which paſſed for contagious, his wife and two children dying of it about two months before; his proviſion was thrown in at the opening of his hut, or rather tomb, for he could hardly be ſaid to be a living creature; his deplorable ſituation inſpired me with pity, how much did I wiſh it in my power to adminiſter a remedy. His having remained ill ſo long convinced me it could be no mortal or contagious diſtemper, as theſe are ever more ſudden in their effects.

It was in vain that I called to my remembrance how at Surinam we gathered the balſam of *capivi*, and that of *racaſſin*, which is, I believe, the *Tolu* of the phyſicians, and with only thoſe helps eaſily cured our Negroes.

Africa

Africa afforded me none of thoſe ſalutary plants, if they grew here I was ignorant of the ſpot. However, a ſudden idea ſtruck me, that if I could not entirely cure his pains, at leaſt I might relieve them.

I began, by tranquiliſing the minds of theſe good ſavages, aſſuring them the malady was not contagious, neither would it communicate by touching the ſick man, much leſs by breathing the air that ſurrounded him; to perſuade them yet more, I aſſured them the malady was perfectly known to me; without this precaution, the deſign I had formed would have been rendered abortive, an invincible prejudice making them dread an epidemical diſorder; fortunately they believed me, and promiſed to execute my orders. I told them it would be neceſſary that the ſick man ſhould be rubbed with mutton fat, that this innocent remedy would relax the ſkin,

ſkin, and enable him to move. I deſired they would give him ſome mats, which were placed under him; I then propoſed to build a new hut, and to have him carried to it; this advice was received with pleaſure by my aſſiſtants; not to give them time to cool, my *Hottentots* and myſelf aſſiſted in forming the hut, which was ſoon finiſhed, and fit to receive him.

He was brought out ſtretched on the mats, and carried to his new dwelling, the old one was immediately demoliſhed. I appeared a ſuperior being in the eyes of theſe ſavages, with what concern did they follow the poor fellow, their looks alternately fixed on him and me, they already conceived hopes; that gentle ſoother of the human heart beamed in their countenances, and redoubled their compaſſion; the women entreating that aſſiſtance they ſuppoſed me capable of giving

giving, in order to relieve his ſufferings, and reſtore him to health.

And, indeed, there never was ſeen a more miſerable object, he appeared almoſt a ſkeleton, ill covered with a ſhrunk and parched ſkin, which in ſeveral places expoſed the bones of his legs, arms, and ſides; the joints were ſwelled beyond meaſure; in ſhort, it is impoſſible for imagination to form a picture of greater horror and diſtreſs.

After the rubbing I had ordered, they carried him into the hut, where I recommended him to the care of the whole *Hoord*; and deſired he might have no other food than milk.

I much doubt whether the help he received was ſufficient to relieve him, I was but an indifferent phyſician, but as I thought

thought his end inevitable, I believed myſelf juſtifiable in attempting to relieve him, though the trial had even haſtened his diſſolution.

Indeed, to have kept him in the ſtate he was, would have been a height of cruelty that even his greateſt enemy could hardly have been guilty of.

On returning to the dwelling of *Haabas* his wife preſented me with ſome milk, ſhe had likewiſe killed a ſheep to entertain me and my people. I had cauſed ſome ſlices of meat to be broiled before the hut, but the horrid ſpectacle I had juſt quitted continued to preſent itſelf to my imagination, and deſtroyed my appetite; but fearful that the hoſpitable ſavages ſhould think their meat diſguſted me, (which would have been a cruel mortification), I forced myſelf to eat a little.

From

From the place I ſat I could ſee my people, who, leſs delicate than their maſter, were regaling themſelves heartily with the food that had been given them, and were as merry as if they had been at a wedding.

Dinner finiſhed, I had but the neceſſary time left to reach home before it was dark, I therefore took leave of my friendly entertainers with a general *Tabe*, and mounted followed by the whole *Hoord*; being hurried in point of time I ſet ſpurs to my horſe, and in leſs than an hour *Klaas* and myſelf reached the waggons, the reſt of my people were much later; about twenty *Gonaquais* men and women whom curioſity attached to their ſteps accompanied them. At any other time this viſit might not been inconvenient, but it now happened that I had plenty of proviſions, therefore what they conſumed could in no wiſe derange me.

It will no doubt be ſuppoſed that gentle *Narina* was among the number; but what afterwards ſurpriſed me was, ſhe had ſo well concealed herſelf, that it was only on the morrow, I learned from herſelf, when ſhe arrived.

The night was paſſed in ſinging and dancing, and unwilling to deprive them of their amuſement, I could not reſolve to give them any interruption.

The means of preſerving over the ſavage that ſuperiority, which the preſumptuous European ever claims, is not (as has been believed) to intimidate and ſpread diſmay; ſuch weak ſyſtems could only be formed by the temerity of a fool, or executed by a paltroon at the head of his guards; who, by means of his power, enacts harſh and imperious laws.

I am convinced we ſhould not require of

of theſe men of nature ſacrifices too painful, for by prudently moderating our deſires we frequently gain more than when we graſp at every thing with a greedy avidity: the only way to gain their friendſhip, is to make ourſelves beloved; with theſe ideas it may be eaſily ſuppoſed I do not believe there is a country ſo deſert or little known, but I could preſent myſelf in it without fear; diſtruſt is the cauſe of barbarity among the ſavages, if an act can be ſo termed, whoſe principle only tends to deſtroy thoſe who invade their property, and deſtroy their peace.

I had not been able to ſleep the whole night; I roſe at day-break—what was my ſurprize to behold *Narina!* She appeared more embarraſſed, more timid than uſual: it was now (as I have before obſerved) that ſhe informed me ſhe had arrived with the reſt the evening before.

I gently reproached her for having concealed herſelf from me, and intreated her to tell me the reaſon of it; but notwithſtanding my moſt preſſing inſtances I could obtain no poſitive anſwer, ſo obſtinately did ſhe adhere to her reſolution of concealment; in a word, as if ſhe had feared all at once to have been too ſanguine in her hopes, ſhe became more fearful on perceiving the ſuſpicions and inquietudes which I experienced on her account. This ingenuous reſerve increaſed my affection. The coffee was juſt prepared, and *Narina* partook of it with me.

The whole day was ſpent in dancing and merriment. On the morrow curioſity brought in their turns the whole *Hoorde* to my camp; they were coming and going in every direction, from morning to night without intermiſſion. This ſpectacle was very pleaſing to me; it was the charming picture of a village holliday, and I received my

my viſitors with the utmoſt cordiality. I enquired after the invalid, the account they gave of him was very agreeable to me. I was aſſured that he never ceaſed to mention me with tears of gratitude.

He was ſtill in pain, but how much was his condition altered! What comfort did he receive from the neceſſaries with which I had furniſhed him!—He now, at leaſt, enjoyed the conſolation of ſeeing and converſing with his former companions, who, confiding in my aſſurances, made no ſcruple of entering his hut, and yielding him their aſſiſtance.

Their preſence was a balm to his wounds, more ſalutary than the moſt emollient plants. His ſituation was ſo deſperate that I much doubt whether it was poſſible he ſhould recover, if he did, the caſe afforded his mind muſt have contributed to it conſiderably. What could

have been more diſtreſſing, more horrible, than to have ſeen himſelf forſaken by his friends, his neareſt relatives, and abandoned as an out-caſt from ſociety?

Every one related the circumſtances of this poor fellow as they happened to ſtrike him; and theſe accounts were accompanied with thanks more or leſs ardent, in proportion as the relators were more or leſs connected by family or friendſhip to the unhappy ſufferer.

It was not till the afternoon of the ſecond day, that theſe worthy *Gonaquais* took leave of my camp. In order the more ſtrongly to recommend their ſick countryman to their care, I aſſured them at parting, that I ſhould look on the pains beſtowed on him as a favour conferred on myſelf; and I conjured *Narina* in particular, to preſent him from me with a ſmall quantity of tobacco.

Before

Before ſhe quitted me, I added ſome freſh preſents to thoſe I had already given her. I had not often been in this girl's company, yet I was ſenſible of an attachment to her, I was pleaſed with her manner; and her diſpoſition ſeemed to bear ſuch an analogy with my own, that I could hardly perſuade myſelf our friendſhip was of ſo late a date, or that it would be ſo ſuddenly terminated; yet I ſuppoſed I was about to bid her an eternal adieu! other cares, other purſuits demanded my attention.

## CHAPTER III.

MODEST BEHAVIOUR OF THE GONAQUAIS WOMEN—SITUATION AND DESCRIPTION OF A KRAAL — ACCOUNT OF THEIR DRESS AND ORNAMENTS — MODE OF NURSING CHILDREN.

IT is neceſſary to obſerve, that the women of this country had not behaved with my people like thoſe who inhabit about the river *Gamtoos*; they conducted themſelves with the greateſt diſcretion, never coming without their men, nor remaining after they had left us.

I con-

I confeſs, that theſe viſits, which were often long and very frequent, began to give me uneaſineſs. I feared, with reaſon, that the reſult of them would be the introducing diſorder among my people, and making them too much in love with amuſements. Already they began to relax in their occupations, they hunted with leſs ardour than formerly, dancing took up all their thoughts. Thoſe I had appointed to look after my cattle performed their duty with regret, and ſuffered them to wander where they pleaſed; others abſented themſelves from my camp the whole night; but I thought it good policy to ſhut my eyes on theſe abuſes, until I had an opportunity of making them return inſenſibly to their duty. The heats at this time began to be inſupportable; the ſun after having repaſſed the equator, darted his beams on our heads with ſuch violence, as rendered travelling in the heat of the day extremely danger-

ous;

ous; my very tent at this time ſeemed a ſtove, ſo violently heated as ſcarcely to be endured. What a powerful motive was this to engage me to ſeek the ſhelter of ſome wood, that might ward off the ſcorching ray; but it ſhould be remembered, that *Koks Kraal* was the rendezvous appointed with that part of my train which I had ſent to the *Caffres*; and at their return, had they been diſappointed in meeting with me at this place, they might have concluded ſome accident had happened; or, that tired with waiting for them, I had decamped and continued my journey: but I was too much concerned for the happineſs of thoſe who attended me, to give them the uneaſineſs of thinking I could abandon them. I determined therefore, to continue where I was until their arrival, which I thought could not be at any great diſtance; reſolving to employ this interval in endeavouring to make each of my people attentive

tentive to the employment aſſigned him; and I reſolved to ſet them an example of diligence myſelf.

I never failed (in purſuance of my original plan) to appropriate a part of each evening to the writing my journal, and marking the particulars which diſtinguiſh the different nations of *Hottentots*, that I had encountered; particularly thoſe ſingularities in which the *Gonaquais* differ from all others.

The *Kraal* of *Haabas* is ſituated at about four hundred paces diſtance from the river *Groot Vis*, on a gentle aſcent, which riſes imperceptibly till you arrive at the foot of a chain of mountains, which are covered with foreſts of very large trees. A rivulet croſſes the *Kraal*, and loſes itſelf in the river. The huts, which are about forty in number, and which occupy an area of about ſix hundred feet ſquare, form ſeveral

half

half circles, and are united with each other by thoſe little incloſures in which each family keeps its calves and lambs; for they never ſuffer them to follow their dams during the day. They only ſuck morning and evening, at which time they milk their cows and ewes. Beſides theſe particular incloſures there are three larger ones, ſtrongly fenced, and deſtined to contain, during the night the general ſtock of cattle belonging to the whole *Hoord*. The form of theſe huts is the ſame with thoſe of the *Hottentots* of the colonies, and meaſure about eight or nine feet in diameter. Some of them are covered with the hides of oxen or ſheep, but more with mats. They have but one aperture, which is very low and narrow; the fire is made in the centre of the hut, ſo that the thick ſmoke which deſcends from it, mingled with the fetid ſmells from innumerable cauſes, would ſuffocate an European who ſhould have the courage to remain in it

two

two minutes; yet, cuſtom has rendered this bearable, perhaps comfortable to theſe ſavages. It is true, they are always in the open air during the day, but when night approaches every one gains his habitation, where ſtretched on his mat, and covered with a ſheep's ſkin, he reſts as content, and ſleeps as ſoundly, as if repoſing on a bed of dawn. When the night happens to be more cold than ordinary, they cover themſelves with larger ſkins, ſuch as they put over their mats to ſleep on. The *Gonaquais* always have a change of theſe neceſſaries. When the day appears the mats and ſkins are rowled up, and placed on one ſide of the hut; and when the weather is fine they frequently expoſe them to the ſun and air, and beat them carefully, not only to free them from the duſt, but alſo to clear them from thoſe inſects which abound in thoſe warm climates, and whoſe company is extremely diſagreeable; but with all their care they have

have enough to do to prevent their increaſe.

I have before obſerved that the female *Gonaquais* have an appearance of care, and finery in their ornaments unknown to the *Hottentots* of the colonies. There is no difference in the form of their habits, but the former wear them conſiderably larger than they are worn by the coloniſts. Their aprons, which they call *Neuyp Kros*, deſcend almoſt to their knees, and it is in the ornaments, I might ſay in the prodigious profuſion of embroidery, that is laviſhed on them, that conſiſts the richneſs, the magnificence on which they pride themſelves. It is in the arrangement of this apron that the taſte and ſmartneſs of the female *Gonaquais* conſiſts. The flouriſhes and compartments, the art with which the different colours are mingled and contraſted, in ſhort, nothing is neglected which they think will render them pleaſ-

ing

ing to the eye. The more their habits are decorated with beads aud ſhells, the more ſumptuous they conceive themſelves. They likewiſe ornament their caps with them; theſe are uſually made of the ſkin of a *Zebra*, becauſe the white fur of that animal, varied with brown or black ſtreaks, gives a relief to their countenances; and (as they ſay) renders their charms more ſtriking. Glaſs beads are held in the higheſt eſtimation, and conſtitute a principal part of their finery. They take the greateſt care in the decorations of their perſons; bracelets, girdles, necklaces, nothing is forgotten, when they mean to appear full dreſſed, which they think can add to their embelliſhment. They likewiſe make a kind of netting to cover their legs with, in the form of buſkins; but thoſe who cannot arrive at the height of magnificence here deſcribed, content themſelves with decorating their legs only, with the ſame kind of ruſhes their mats are made of,

of, or with ſmall thongs cut from the hide of an ox and rounded with a mallet.

This cuſtom has given riſe to thoſe accounts which are to be met with in a number of travels, (moſtly copied one from another) where theſe people are ſaid to wrap the inteſtines of the beaſts they kill, round their legs and arms; and that they devour their ornaments when they begin to putrify: it is a groſs error, which ought to be forgotten with the books that have produced it. A *Hottentot*, perhaps, may have been reduced by famine, to make uſe of this reſource to preſerve his exiſtence; he may have eaten his ſandals, when he could not poſſibly have procured any other ſubſiſtence; but have not the horrors of a ſiege often reduced the moſt civilized people to avail themſelves of the moſt diſguſting aliments? and ſhould we thence conclude that they were fond of what neceſſity alone would have conſtrain-

ed

ed them to make uſe of, and from which they would otherwiſe have turned with the utmoſt horror and diſguſt?

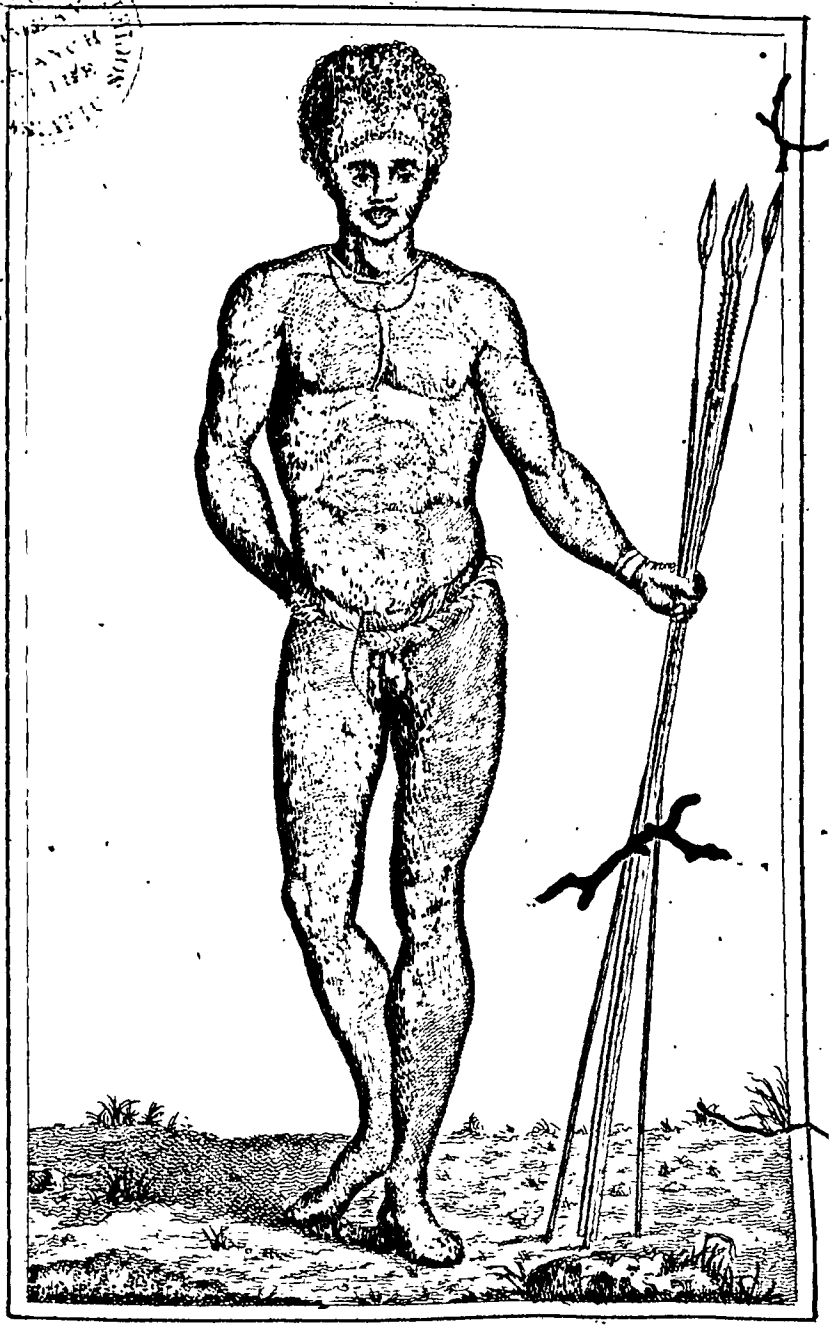
Originally the bandages of leather, or ruſhes, with which the *Hottentots* uſed to envelope their legs, were conſidered as a neceſſary preſervative againſt the thorns and briars: they ſerved likewiſe to ſecure them from the bite of the ſerpents, with which theſe parts of Africa abound; but luxury has ſubverted theſe inventions which neceſſity ſuggeſted, and the women have ſupplied the place of thoſe ſkins and ruſhes, which were of real utility, with netting and beads, which they now conſider merely as an ornament.

Thus, in the wilds of Africa, as well as in the more enlightened parts of the globe, the wiſeſt and moſt ſalutary inſtitutions, are in time corrupted and degraded! This cuſtom of the *Hottentots* at leaſt confirms

one truth, that vanity is the production of every climate, and however ſcantily nature may have furniſhed the means of ſatisfying that paſſion, women will endeavour to gratify it.

Though ſo much habituated to the ſight of theſe Africans, I could never reconcile myſelf to the cuſtom they have of painting themſelves with a thouſand ridiculous marks and figures; to the laſt, it appeared to me hedious and diſguſting. I cannot conceive what grace they can poſſibly think they receive from this abominable cuſtom, which is not only ridiculous but naſty. I have added a plate of a female *Hottentot* in all her habiliments, and I can aſſure my readers it is by no means exaggerated.

The two colours in greateſt eſtimation among them are red and black. The firſt is an ochre, which is found in a number of



A Caffre

of places in this country, and is prepared for their uſe by being ground up with a quantity of greaſe. The black colour is nothing more than ſoot or charcoal, and is prepared in the ſame manner. Some women, it is true, content themſelves with painting their cheeks only, but the generality divide their faces into ſeveral diſtinct compartments, and this article of embelliſhment they are a conſiderable time in completing. Theſe favourite colours of the *Hottentots* are always perfumed with the powder of *bucku*, which does not ſtrike the ſmell of an European with any agreeable ſenſation, but perhaps our eſſences, odours, and perfumes, would be equally inſupportable to a *Hottentot*. At leaſt, the *bucku* has one advantage over our paſte, waſhes, and rouge; it is not pernicious to the ſkin, and never reduces thoſe who uſe it to conſumptions. The *Hottentot* who knows nothing of muſk, ambergreaſe, or benjamin, is likewiſe unac-

quainted with megrims, ſpaſms, and vapours. The men never paint their faces like the women, but they frequently make uſe of a mixture of the two colours to daub their upper lips; by which diſpoſition of it they have the ſatisfaction of enjoying the ſmell inceſſantly. The young laſſes ſometimes ſuffer their lovers to apply this delicate mixture under their noſes; this is conſidered as a favour, and gives the laſs ſo decorated an air of ſmartneſs which renders her extremely intereſting in the eyes of a young *Hottentot*.

I would not have my readers infer from what I have ſaid, that the female *Hottentots* are ſo intent on decorating their perſons as to neglect thoſe daily and neceſſary occupations which their mode of living requires; it is only on certain holidays, which occur but ſeldom, that they ſpend ſo much of their time in dreſs.

Separated

Separated from Europe by an immenſe ocean, and from the Dutch colonies by deſerts, mountains, and dangerous rocks; they are cut off from all communication with other people, and if they have not arrived at our improvements, they have equally avoided the exceſs of our depravity. When women here have the happineſs to become mothers, they apply themſelves more intenſely than in more poliſhed countries, to the duties of their ſituation; nothing can poſſibly exceed the tenderneſs and ſolicitude with which they nurſe and rear their infant offspring. From the time of its birth till it is able to walk, the child never quits the back of its mother: her loved burden is faſtened there by means of two bandages, diſpoſed in ſuch a manner as to prevent its ſliding down; they are a kind of aprons, made of the ſkin of ſome animal, and generally ornamented with ſhells, beads, &c. which, at the ſame time that they ſupport, ſerve to

ſecure the infant from the ſun and wind; theſe ſimple articles are all the neceſſaries that are requiſite for a new-born infant. Whether the mother is employed in the neceſſary occupations of her family, or goes to a dance, or even when ſhe partakes of this amuſement, her child continues at her back, its head only is viſible; it never cries, or is peeviſh, unleſs when it has occaſion for the breaſt, then the mother turns it to her ſide, which ſhe can readily do without untying it. But after a woman has had ſeveral children, ſhe has in general, no occaſion to take this trouble, but gives it the nipple under her arm or over her ſhoulder; the infant having ſatisfied its hunger, the mother recommences her dancing.

When the child is ſuppoſed to have acquired a ſufficient degree of ſtrength to enable it to make an attempt to walk, they ſet it on the ground before their hut, where,

where, after repeated endeavours it learns to ſtand; its ſtrength encreaſing, it is ſoon able to walk, and in a ſhort time to follow its father or mother. This ſimple method, which nature herſelf ſeems to have dictated, is, in my opinion, preferable to our manner of teaching children the uſe of their feet. The great diſproportion that ſubſiſts between the weight of an infant's body, and the ſtrength of its legs, obliges it to reſt the greateſt part of its weight on the leading ſtrings, which paſſing over the breaſt, ſtraighten and contract the cheſt, injure its health, and frequently render it ricketty and diſfigured for the reſt of its life.

Never either in America or Africa have I ſeen a ſingle inſtance of a native being either crooked legged or hunch backed; it is the inhabitants of Europe chiefly who are ſubject to theſe melancholy diſtortions.

What likewiſe contributes to give the children of theſe Africans that ſtrength and activity for which they are remarkable, is the care the mothers take to rub their limbs frequently with mutton ſuet; even the men accuſtom themſelves to this unction, which renders their ſkin ſoft and flexible, and at the ſame time makes them leſs ſenſible of the impetuoſity of the wind, or violent heats of the ſun. The African climates are not ſo favourable in their productions to the *Hottentots* as thoſe of America are to the *Caribbees*, who have the advantage of the *rocou*, which renders them a continual ſervice. It is well known that this tree produces a kind of fruit whoſe pod contains about ſixty ſeeds or kernels, covered with an oily reddiſh ſkin. The Indian, who always goes naked, never fails to rub himſelf with them every morning, from head to foot; this preſerves him from being ſcorched by the rays of the ſun, or incommoded by the ſtings of the

the muſquitoes, and prevents the too abundant perſpiration, to which the inhabitants of theſe tropical regions are ſubject.

When a *Hottentot* woman draws near the time of her delivery, ſhe is carefully aſſiſted by an old woman of the *Hoord*; theſe births are always happy; the Cæſarian method is unknown among theſe ſavages, the queſtion is never aſked whether the infant ſhall be preſerved at the expence of the mother; if the life of one muſt neceſſarily be ſacrificed, no horrible diſtinction could ever ſuggeſt the unnatural, abominable idea of murdering the parent to preſerve the child.

I took great pains to enquire among the *Hottentots* whether, when a mother is delivered of twins, one of them is deſtroyed upon the ſpot; the reſult of my enquiry

enquiry was, that this unnatural cuſtom is very rarely practiſed. Though a great cruelty, it is ſuppoſed to owe its riſe to maternal tenderneſs, the fear of not being able to furniſh ſufficient nouriſhment for both, (and conſequently ſeeing them periſh), has ſuggeſted the expedient of ſacrificing one to the ſafety of the other. The *Gonaquais* are totally exempt from this reproach, and I have even ſeen ſome among them highly offended with my enquiries. But what right have we to hold theſe ſavages in abhorrence indiſcriminately, for a cuſtom which does not generally prevail, and which, as I have obſerved, bears at leaſt the plauſible excuſe of a prevention? Even in the boſom of the moſt enlightened nations, we have frequent inſtances of unnatural mothers, who expoſe in the ſtreets, and abandon to the care of the firſt comer, their innocent and unfortunate offspring.

They

They calumniate theſe people therefore, who charge them with a crime which they diſavow and contradict by their practice. In more than one *Hoord*, I have met with mothers who have nurſed their twins without any apparent inconvenience; ſome travellers notwithſtanding, have atteſted the exiſtence of this barbarous cuſtom: even Mr. Sparman, ſpeaking of ſucking infants who chance to loſe their mothers, expreſſes himſelf as follows, in the ſecond volume of his work:

"Another cuſtom, not leſs horrible, "which has never before been remarked "by any author, but whoſe exiſtence "among the *Hottentots* has been fully "*certified*; is, that when a mother hap- "pens to die, they bury alive with her "the infant at her breaſt. This very "year, in a place where I happened to be, "the fact which I am about to relate ac- "tually

" tually happened. A female *Hottentot* " belonging to this plantation happening " to die of an epidemical fever, the other " *Hottentots* who did not think them- " ſelves able to bring up the female infant, " or who did not care to trouble them- " ſelves with it, had already wrapped it " up in a ſheep-ſkin in order to bury it " with its mother. Some farmers in the " neighbourhood however, prevented the " accompliſhment of their deſigns; but " the infant expired ſoon after in convul- " ſions.

" My hoſteſs, who was not very young, " aſſured me, that about ſixteen or ſeven- " teen years before in the canton of *Swel-* " *lenham*, an infant *Hottentot* was found " packed up in a ſkin and faſtened to the " arm of a tree, near the ſpot where his " mother had been recently interred; its " life was ſaved, and it was brought up

" by

"by the relations of Madam Rock, but "died at the age of eighteen; the reſult of "theſe examples, and ſeveral other infor- "mations which *I have received from the* "*coloniſts, &c.*"

We might conclude from theſe words of the botaniſt, that he had ſeen nothing of what he relates; ſince he declares here, as in ſome other parts of his work, that he had theſe particulars from the *coloniſts*. He was ſufficiently acquainted with them, to know how little either their knowledge or memory was to be depended on; this might have been a ſufficient reaſon to have ſpared him the trouble of writing, and me of contradicting a number of fables. It is not from auricular tales that we ſhould form a judgment, or eſtimate of a people. In the moſt cautious accounts wrote by thoſe who may have had ample means of information, ſome miſtakes

miſtakes will ariſe; but how egregiouſly may we miſlead others, when we attempt to account for, and deſcribe cuſtoms we have not been eye-witneſſes of. It is to be obſerved, that the mother of the firſt mentioned child died of an epidemical diſtemper; and is it not very poſſible, that the *Hottentots* had fled both from the corps and infant, through dread of the infection? This motive is ſufficiently powerful to make them inſtantly forſake even their flocks, which are their greateſt riches. The ſecond child, found in the canton of *Swillendam*, might have been abandoned from the ſame cauſe; and until they have given me better demonſtration of the frequent practice of this barbarity, I would wiſh to expunge it from the hiſtory of theſe people, the moſt peaceful and compaſſionate that I ever met with: indeed, almoſt all the accounts of theſe poor Africans ſhould be exploded and for-

forgotten,

gotten, with the ſtories of witches and conjurers.

It ſeems extraordinary, that writers have endeavoured to vilify theſe innocent people; while they have a degree of reſpect, equally unaccountable, for the inhabitants of the eaſt: for example, they paſs lightly over the cuſtom which the women of Pekin have, of expoſing thoſe children they wiſh to get rid of in the ſtreet during the night, that they may be cruſhed to death at day-break, by the carriages and beaſts of burden, or devoured by the ſwine.

# CHAPTER IV.

MISTAKES OF FORMER AUTHORS CORRECTED RESPECTING THE HOTTENTOT MARRIAGES —MODE OF SEPARATION—FONDNESS OF THE GONAQUAIS FOR HUNTING—DESCRIPTION OF THEIR WEAPONS.

THE travellers of Aſia inform us, that the lords of *Thibet* go in pilgrimage to *Putali*, the place of the grand Lama's reſidence; where they procure the excrements of this ſovereign prieſt, which they carry as amulets about their necks, and even mingle with their aliments.

This

This ridiculous and nauſeous cuſtom is not more diſguſting than that falſely attributed to the *Hottentots* in the celebration of their marriages, where thoſe people are not only furniſhed with ceremonies, but even with prieſts; which is an office they never had the leaſt conception of. From the diſpenſer of theſe imaginary myſteries, the bride and bridegroom are ſaid to receive a ſtream, which, with great devotion, they rub into their bodies; the author, I have juſt before cited, is very much inclined to believe theſe rhapſodies, on the report only of the coloniſts: for he ſays, that "the common accounts "reſpecting the matrimonial rites of theſe "people are not deſtitute of foundation, "but are only practiſed in the interior part "of the *Kraals*, and never in the preſence "of the coloniſts."

Kolben has been very particular in his deſcription of theſe ceremonies; and, in

order to give an appearance of authenticity to his relation, has preſented his readers with a plate deſcriptive of them. Others, without a knowledge of the ſubject they have written on, have copied him: even to the French tranſlation of Mr. Sparman, to which they have thought fit to add (by way of completing the ſecond volume), I know not what extracts from a new *Syſtem* of *Geography*. Indeed, I am not acquainted with a ſingle account of theſe parts of Africa, but what is diſfigured with the abſurd reveries of Kolben; even the work of a moſt eſtimable author, being not totally exempt from them. Thus, for more than eighty years paſt, the ſame miſtakes have been word for word repeated, not only with reſpect to their marriage ceremonies, but alſo in the deſcription of their initiation into an order of knighthood, which terminates by a general immerſion of the knight.

But,

But, I dwell too long on theſe details, though I wiſh to render a juſt account, not only of the objects I encountered, but alſo of the reflections they gave riſe to; and I thought that marking the errors of former writers might be of as great utility as pointing my readers to new diſcoveries.

At about twelve or thirteen, a *Hottentot* girl is marriageable; when the firſt youth that can gain her affections, readily obtains the conſent of her parents.

In a country where there is no difference in birth or rank, every inhabitant is neceſſarily on an equality. Luxury and vanity (which in more poliſhed countries conſume the largeſt fortunes) create a thouſand unhappy diſtinctions, entirely unknown to theſe ſavages; their deſires are bounded by real wants, nor are they excluded from the means of gratifying them; and theſe means may be, and are

effectually purſued by all: thus, the various combinations of pride for the aggrandiſement of families, all the ſchemes for heaping fortune on fortune in the ſame coffer, being utterly unknown, no intrigues are created, no oppreſſions practiſed, in fine, no crimes inſtigated. Parents have not a ſingle motive which can tempt them to oppoſe thoſe ſentiments of predilection, which their children may form for one object in preference to another.

Theſe marriages founded on reciprocal inclination have ever a happy iſſue; and as love is their only cement, they require no other motive for parting than indifference; this however is by no means frequent, for in theſe peaceful and innocent abodes their unions are more durable than many might ſuppoſe them. A lively and mutual affection uſually ſubſiſts between the wedded pair; and the love of their children

children renders them every day more dear and neceſſary to each other.

The formalities, then, of theſe marriages conſiſt in the promiſes made by each party, to live together as long as they may find it convenient: the engagement made, the young couple from that moment are man and wife. They then kill ſome ſheep, ſometimes an ox, to celebrate this little holiday; the parents on both ſides furniſh the young couple with ſome cattle, they immediately apply themſelves to the conſtruction of a hut, forming an incloſure, and in getting together their little ſtock of neceſſaries, where, as I have hinted before, they live together as long as harmony ſubſiſts between them: for ſhould any difference ariſe, which is not likely to ſubſide, they make no ſcruple of ſeparation, but part with as little ceremony as they met, and each one free to form

other connections, ſeeks elſewhere a more agreeable partner.

Juſtice certainly preſcribes that the effects of the married pair in theſe inſtances ſhould be equally divided, but ſhould the huſband in his quality of maſter inſiſt on retaining the whole, the wife never fails to find thoſe who will aſſert and defend her right; her family intereſts itſelf, nor are the friends of the man idle, ſo that ſometimes the whole *Hoord* is in a ferment; in the end they come to blows, and as in all other places, the conquerors give laws to the vanquiſhed. The mother always has the care of the younger children, eſpecially if they are girls; while the boys who are able to follow their father, are ſure to belong to him. Theſe diſagreements I muſt again obſerve, are very rare; and it is equally worthy of remark, that they have no known law or

eſtabliſhed

eſtabliſhed cuſtom, to which they can refer for the termination of their differences.—Every thing that Kolben has advanced of their courts of juſtice, their manner of proceeding in civil affairs, the account of the ſuperior council of the nation, their priſons, public aſſemblies, in a word, all thoſe inſtitutions which indeed have no correſpondence with the appellation of ſavage, (ſince a people thus governed differ from us only in their colour and climate), ſhould be conſidered in the ſame light with the reſt of his aſſertions.

I never either ſaw or heard of any quarrel being attended with a murder; but if this misfortune ſhould happen, the family to whom the unhappy victim belonged, would certainly require that the law of retaliation ſhould be put in force, the whole *Hoord* would join to puniſh ſuch an atrocious crime, and the aſſaſſin would

be conſtrained, if he would eſcape death, to ſeek his ſafety by a precipitate flight.

Though poligamy is not repugnant to the cuſtoms of the *Hottentots*, it is by no means common among them; they may take as many wives as they pleaſe, but whether from a love of peace, or any other motive, that number ſeldom exceeds one. Women are never known to cohabit with two men; nature, that would ever have a father able to aſcertain his own offspring, has wiſely planted in the heart of a female *Gonaquais*, an invincible horror for ſuch infamous proſtitution. Nay, ſo diſguſting is it to theſe people, that a huſband on the knowledge of the moſt trifling infidelity of his wife, might kill her without fear of incurring the reproach of the *Hoord*.

It will be remembered that this remark bears

bears ſome exceptions; I allude to the familiarity with which the firſt *Hottentots* came amongſt my people; but the reader ſhould alſo recollect, that they dwelt nearer the coloniſts, where the force of example is dangerous; and it would be next to miraculous to ſee among theſe half ſavages conjugal faith, firm againſt the ſolicitation and artful addreſſes of an European; one of theſe women thus diſtinguiſhed, looks on her huſband with haughtineſs and diſguſt, while he is ſoon appeaſed, and eaſily conſoled by ſome trifling preſents; but even that precaution is ſometimes uſeleſs; for by an alteration of their primitive manners, they are ſcarcely ſuſceptible of jealouſy, much leſs of its attendant horrors.

The *Gonaquai* is not ſo particular in his dreſs as the women: it has been ſaid, that in the winter ſeaſon he wears the hairy ſide of his *Kros* inward; that during the

the heats he turns it; the thing is poſſible, and totally indifferent: but they have always one without hair, and which requires infinite pains in the preparation.

I have before remarked, that the *Gonaquais* are much taller than the *Hottentots* of the colonies, and that their *Kros* is made of a calf ſkin: indeed, it is rarely that one ſkin anſwers the purpoſe; as they make it fuller, by adding to each ſide a piece, which is ſewed on with thread, made from the entrails of animals: this ſeam is ſewed in the manner of thoſe made by our ſhoe-makers. To make holes, the ſavage uſes a bit of iron; if he cannot procure it, he contents himſelf with a piece of bone: thoſe of oſtrich's legs are the hardeſt, and moſt eſteemed. They have two ways of dreſſing their ſkins: when it is freſh, they wrap it up with the hair inwards, leaving it for two days until it begins to ferment; this is the proper time

time for taking off the hair, which ſeparates without much trouble; they then give it a kind of preparation by rubbing, after which it is left for a day or two covered with the leaves of the *Hottentot* fig well macerated; this operation finiſhed, they take away all the fibres and fleſhy parts that remain; at length, after being again well rubbed with mutton fat, it requires great ſoftneſs and flexibility; there is not much difference between this method and that uſed by the furriers and tanners of Europe; yet, though the *Hottentots* are very expert in preparing their ſkins, they are not comparable to ours.

If the ſkin is ſuffered to dry before it has been prepared, or has been preſerved with the hair on, and the ſavage, in default of another, wiſhes to convert it into a *Kros* for ſummer, the work requires a different proceſs, which is very tedious. With the rib bones of a ſheep, they form a kind

a kind of ſciſſars which are made as ſharp as poſſible; this inſtrument is managed with great ſkill, and brings the hair out by the roots without damaging the leather, but the work requires infinite pains and addreſs.

The *Gonaquai*, (except in very cold or rainy weather) goes bare headed; his hair is uſually adorned with beads, or feathers; ſome I have ſeen uſe bits of cut leather for this purpoſe, others having killed ſome ſmall quadruped, inflate the bladder, which they faſten as a kind of aigrette on their foreheads.

In general they wear ſandals, which they faſten with leather thongs; they alſo ornament their legs and arms with bracelets of ivory; but theſe are not ſo much valued as thoſe of thick braſs wire; theſe they take great pains with, rubbing them

them often, until they are extremely well poliſhed.

They are fond of hunting, and have great ſkill in it; independant of the ſnares ſpread for large game they lay wait for, and attack them with their *Aſſaygay*, or ſhoot them with empoiſoned arrows; theſe two are the only weapons they uſe: an animal wounded with the latter, ſoon feels the effect of the poiſon which coagulates the blood; though an elephant thus wounded, has ſometimes been found dead twenty or thirty leagues diſtant from the ſpot where he received the mortal blow.

As ſoon as the animal is dead, they cut off the wounded part, which they conſider as dangerous, but the reſt is not in any manner infected by the poiſon. I have often partook of thoſe meats without experiencing the ſmalleſt inconvenience; but I muſt confeſs, I ſhould not have

have been fond of doing this when the poiſon had remained in the animal ſome time. The firſt time I inſpected their arrows, I did not ſuppoſe them ſuch deadly weapons; they are neither ſo long nor wound at ſuch a diſtance as thoſe the Caribbees uſe in America; but even their ſmallneſs renders them more dangerous; for, when ſhot, it is impoſſible for the eye to perceive their flight, conſequently, there is no means to avoid them, and the ſmalleſt wound is always mortal, if the poiſon reaches the blood; the only remedy is a ſpeedy amputation of the wounded part, if in the limbs; but if the wound is in the body, it is inevitable death.

Theſe arrows are made of reeds, and very curiouſly formed; they are not above eighteen inches, or at moſt two foot long, while thoſe of the Caribbees are ſix feet: at the end of the reed they fix a ſmall bit of bone, three or four inches in length, which

which they have previouſly rounded; this is ſmaller in diameter than the reed, and ſo ſlightly fixed in it, that when the arrow has entered the fleſh the reed may be drawn away, while the bone ſtill remains in the wound. To make it more deadly, it has a ſmall barb of iron on one ſide, which on the leaſt motion, continues to lacerate the fleſh, and renders every attempt to extract it abortive. This bone they anoint with a poiſon, that has the conſiſtence of maſtic; and it is uſually pointed with a little angular head, extremely ſharp, which altogether renders this weapon very terrible.

In each country, they have a particular manner of preparing their poiſon, according to the different noxious plants their ſoil produces, and from which they extract the juice. A particular ſpecies of ſerpent likewiſe ſupplies them with another kind, which the ſavages prefer, as being

being the moſt ſubtil. It is impoſſible to gain the leaſt information of their manner of preparing the venom extracted from theſe ſerpents, it being a ſecret which they inviolably preſerve. This poiſon is very ſudden in its effect, as I have ſeen on many occaſions; yet I am inclined to think it loſes great part of its power after it has been long procured, notwithſtanding the experiment made in the king's garden, whereby its force was warranted. Theſe poiſons, as I have before ſaid, are various; that brought by Monſieur Gondamine, on his return from Peru, is no law for thoſe of Africa: I will alſo add, an experiment of this may be eaſily made, under the inſpection of ſome learned men; ſince I have in my poſſeſſion a quiver of arrows that I had the good fortune to take from a *Hottentot Boſhis* man in a rencontre, where I only ſaved my own life at the expence of his; but I ſhall recount this circumſtance in its proper place.

The

The bows are proportioned to the arrows, being not above two feet and a half, or at moſt three feet long; the ſtring is made of the inteſtines of an animal.

The *aſſaygay*, in the hand of a *Hottentot*, is not a very certain weapon, even the length renders it leſs dangerous, as its courſe through the air may be readily ſeen, and eaſily avoided. Though they can throw this weapon a conſiderable way, they have little chance of hitting their mark, when at above forty paces diſtance; and it is only in a cloſe engagement, that it is capable of doing any conſiderable execution.

The *aſſaygay* of this and other countries, is formed like a lance, thoſe of African wood are the lighteſt and moſt uſeful, tapering gradually from the extremity to the barbed head.

The uſe of this weapon is not well underſtood here, for the warrior that handles

it with the greateſt ſkill is eaſily diſarmed. The *Gonaquais*, and all the other *Hottentots* never carry more than one, and the embarraſſment this occaſions, is a plain indication that it is by no means their favourite weapon, from whence we may conclude that the bow and arrows are the natural and proper arms of the *Hottentots*.

I have ſeen ſome throw the *aſſaygay* with ſkill, but the far greater part are wholly ignorant of it; on the contray, the *Caffrees* have no other weapon. Such are the means uſed for attack and defence by ſome of the ſavage nations in Africa; a European will perhaps look on them with diſdain, and tax them with ferocity, but he will then forget that before thoſe thundering engines were employed (that in a moment make ſo many ruins and fill ſo many tombs), his forefathers were obliged like them to make uſe of ſimilar, and content themſelves with leſs deſtructive weapons.

CHAP-

# CHAPTER V.

THE HOTTENTOTS IGNORANT OF AGRICULTURE — FONDNESS FOR SMOAKING — MANNER OF TRAINING OXEN—DISORDERS OF THE CATTLE—ACCOUNT OF THE CAPE SHEEP — ROOTS, PLANTS, &c. DESCRIBED.

THE *Hottentot* is unacquainted even with the firſt elements of agriculture; he neither ſows, plants, nor reaps; all that has been ſaid of their manner of cultivating the earth, gathering the grain, or making of butter, can only regard the coloniſts, and the *Hottentots* they

employ. The African drinks milk in its natural ſtate: if they had any taſte for agriculture it would certainly begin with tobacco, and the vine; for drinking and ſmoaking are the darling pleaſures of both young and old.

They ſometimes make an intoxicating liquor compoſed of honey, and a root, which they leave to ferment in water; and which makes a kind of mead; this liquor is not their ordinary drink; they never make any reſerve of it, but drink it up at once.

They ſmoke a plant which is called *dagha*, (and not *daka*, as ſome authors have termed it), this is the hemp of Europe; ſome of the coloniſts cultivate it, and when they have dried the leaves ſell it very dear to the *Hottentots*, or change it for oxen; and there are thoſe among them who prefer it to tobacco, but the greater

greater part by choice mix them together.

The pipes that come from Europe are held in leſs eſtimation than thoſe they fabricate themſelves, the former they reckon too ſmall; theirs is compoſed of bamboo, and the bowl of baked earth, or of a ſoft kind of ſtone, which they make very capacious; for the greater quantity of tobacco it holds the more they value it. I have ſeen ſome, the cavity of whoſe ſtem (through which they draw the ſmoke) was at leaſt an inch in diameter.

You never meet among the *Gonaquais* with men who apply themſelves to any particular kind of work, in order to ſatisfy the caprice of others; the woman, who deſires to lie ſoft, will fabricate her own mat, or a wiſh to be clothed, will inſtruct a man to make a habit. The huntſman who would have good weapons can depend

on thoſe of his own making, and the lover is the only architect of the cabin that is to contain his future companion.

I own it would not be difficult to find in moſt other nations a greater degree of art and knowledge; the only furniture I ſaw in this country, except their mats and ſkins, was ſome very brittle earthen-ware. The *Gonaquais* ſeldom boil their meat, preferring it either roaſt or broiled; their pottery therefore is chiefly uſeful in melting the fat of their animals, which they preſerve in calibaſhes or bags, made of ſheep-ſkins, &c.

Though they have prodigious quantities of ſheep and oxen, it is very uncommon for them to kill any of the latter, unleſs they meet with ſome accident, or old age has rendered them uſeleſs; their principal food is the milk of cows and ewes, with the produce of the chace, and now and then

then a ſheep. When they wiſh to fatten theſe animals, they have a cuſtom which is not the leſs efficacious, becauſe unknown in Europe; and it has this particular advantage over our method, that it requires no care or ſkill in the operation. Inſtead of caſtrating theſe animals, they bruiſe the part with a couple of flat ſtones, which anſwers the ſame purpoſe; in a ſhort time after they get extremely fat, and when killed, are very good eating. It is not cuſtomary to train oxen for war in this country, I had not ſeen the leaſt appearance of it in any place I had yet viſited, though it is very common among the greater *Namaquais*, and I ſhall ſpeak of it in my deſcription of that people. Thoſe which the *Hottentots* breed are purpoſely to carry baggage from one place to another, or to be exchanged.

The beaſts ſet apart to carry burdens, are trained very early to this work, otherwiſe

wiſe they would be ſo untoward it would be utterly impoſſible to manage them.—While the animal is young, they pierce the griſtle that ſeparates the noſtrils, through which they paſs a ſtick of about eight or ten inches in length, and one in diameter; to prevent this from coming out, a leather ſtrap is faſtened to each end: this curb continues in the animal as long as he lives.

As the ox acquires ſtrength, they begin to accuſtom him to the uſe of the girth, to which his future burdens are to be faſtened; this they tighten by degrees, for a beaſt not uſed to ſuch a mode of treatment, would be extremely incommoded, if not killed by it. After it has learned to beat the tightneſs of the girth, they begin to load it with ſmall burdens, as ſkins or mats; and, by inſenſibly increaſing the load, accuſtom them to carry without any inconvenience five hundred weight or more.

The

The manner of loading the ox is very ſimple: a man before, holds the ſtrap that is faſtened to the ſtick, paſſed through his noſtrils; his back is covered with ſkins, to prevent his receiving any injury; as the effects which compoſe his load are thrown over his back, two *Hottentots* (one on each ſide) ſecure them by paſſing under the belly and round the burden a ſtrong girth, ſometimes twenty yards in length; at each winding of this bandage, the men apply their knees or feet to the ſide of the beaſt, in order to tighten it.

It is with an equal degree of pity and aſtoniſhment, that a perſon, unacquainted with this cuſtom, beholds the poor animal walk quietly on, though compreſſed to half its uſual ſize.

The *Hottentots*, and even the coloniſts ſometimes uſe them in lieu of horſes; the motion of the ox is eaſy, particularly when he

he trots; I have ſeen ſome bred for this purpoſe, that would travel equal to a horſe.

Milking the cows and ewes, belongs to the women; and the animals are ſo docile, that it is unneceſſary to tie them. It muſt be obſerved, that in Africa a cow gives no milk if ſhe is deprived of her calf; a misfortune the people take great care to avoid, as it renders the mother uſeleſs, and would diminiſh one of the greateſt reſources of theſe people. The inſtinct which teaches a cow to retain her milk, unleſs ſucked by her calf, deſerves our attention; but on theſe occaſions the *Hottentots* have recourſe to a very common and eaſy method; they carefully dreſs up the ſkin of a calf, which they place by the ſide of the cow, who, deceived by this artifice, readily gives her milk. But this expedient ſeldom ſucceeds for more than a month, which is a great loſs to the proprietor; for when a

cow

cow has not loſt its calf, it continues giving milk until within ſix weeks of its having another.

The cows of Africa like thoſe of Europe, according to the difference of the lands on which they feed, are fat or lean; in general they yield but little milk; thoſe that give three or four pints a day, are looked on as extraordinary good ones. It ſhould ſeem that as we approach the very hot climates, milk, that deſirable gift of nature, becomes a vaſt deal ſcarcer. I remember it was thought very extraordinary at Surinam, (which is near the line) for a cow to give one or two pints a day: what makes good my aſſertion, is, that at the Cape in the rainy ſeaſon, the cows yield much more, and the contrary when the heats commence. This time is extremely dangerous for theſe poor animals, who are ſubject to four deadly maladies, which often make cruel havock. The firſt,

firſt, called at the Cape *Lam-Sikte*, is a ſudden paralitic ſtroke; and though the beaſt is large and fat, when attacked by this diſorder, it is incapable of riſing from the ground, and generally dies in about fifteen days. As ſoon as this diſorder is perceived, they kill all that are attacked with it; they do this the more willingly, as the coloniſts themſelves have no diſlike to this unwholeſome meat. It may therefore be ſuppoſed, they make no ſcruple to feed their *Hottentot* domeſtics and ſlaves with it, who are not over delicate.

The ſecond diſorder is the *Tong-Sikte*, and is ſo prodigious a ſwelling of the tongue, that it fills up the whole vacuity of the mouth and throat, and puts the animal in danger of inſtant ſuffocation. This evil is as terrible as the former; for though there is a remedy, it is ſo little known, and ſo badly adminiſtered, that it has ſeldom the deſired effect: they generally

nerally kill all thoſe who are dangerouſly attacked with it, as the means of preſerving the ſkin and fleſh.

The *Klauw-Sikte* attacks the feet, which ſwell prodigiouſly, and ſometimes ſuppurate. The hoof looſens, hardly hanging on the foot; and to ſee the animal walk, ſuppoſing yourſelf placed behind him, it has the appearancee of ſhuffling along in ſlippers; they are not moved when in this ſituation, but left to reſt while the diſorder laſts; it is not dangerous, uſually ending in about fifteen days.

It is not thus with the *Spong-Sikte*, which rages among the herds of the coloniſts, and even extends itſelf ſometimes to the cattle belonging to the *Hoords*: this plague ſpares few, and happy the man that loſes but half his flock. This diſorder is a ſpecies of leproſy, which is extremely

tremely contagious; the animals ſeized with it, have their fleſh bloated, ſpungy, and livid, the whole body bearing the appearance of bruiſes, filled with a red viſcous humour; ſo very diſguſting, that even dogs will not approach them.

On the firſt ſymptoms of this peſtilence, if there is not great care taken to ſeparate the healthy from the diſeaſed, it is impoſſible to ſave any of them from the contagion.

Such are the principal diſorders, which, by their periodical ravages, maintain a balance between the encreaſe, and mortality of the beaſts in Africa; and without which, the coloniſts, (who are extremely frugal in the conſumption of their ſtock) would be ſoon poſſeſſed of innumerable flocks.

The ſheep the ſavages breed towards the eaſt

eaſt, are a ſpecies known by the name of Cape ſheep, the largeneſs of their tails has made them much ſpoken of, though with a great degree of exaggeration; its ordinary weight being only from four to five pounds. During my ſtay in Cape Town there was one ſhewn from houſe to houſe, and looked on as very extraordinary, whoſe tail weighed at moſt nine pounds and a half; its conſiſtence is merely a lump of fat, which has the peculiar quality, when melted, of remaining in a kind of congealed oil, which the *Hottentots* prefer for anointing themſelves. The coloniſts likewiſe uſe it in their cookery, and, mixed with other greaſy ſubſtances, it ſupplies the place of butter in thoſe cantons that are too barren to permit them to keep cows; in the more plentiful countries they call it from deriſion, the butter of ſuch a place; at the Cape they ſay the butter of *Swart Land*, a barren canton where milk is very ſcarce.

Thoſe

Thoſe dry and barren lands agree well with the goats, who are very healthy; their ſize varying in the different cantons, but generally thriving, and giving as much milk as a cow. They have young twice a year like the ſheep, which commonly have two; but the goat three, or ſometimes four.

Hogs are not known to the *Hottentots*, even the European coloniſts diſdain to breed them; yet I have ſeen ſome in particular cantons, where they multiply and range at liberty, nor can they be obtained but by ſhooting.

Poultry is not at all eſteemed among the *Hottentots*; but had they an inclination to breed them it would be impoſſible, as they ſow no kind of grain.

The roots they are particularly fond of, are reduced to a ſmall number; they are never

never dreſſed in any manner, but always eaten raw; and a trial of both ways convinced me the *Hottentots* were right. That I moſt preferred, called by the natives *Kamero*, is the ſize of a melon, of an agreeable and pleaſing flavour; and admirable for quenching thirſt.

How bountiful is nature in a burning climate, (where it is impoſſible at ſome ſeaſons to find a ſpring) to preſent us with ſo refreſhing a gift!

Though this root is very common, it is not always eaſily found; for when arrived at a ſtate of maturity, the leaves fade and drop; therefore, it is neceſſary to have obſerved it before; but a knowledge of the country ſoon directs a perſon to the ſpot where it is moſt likely to be found.

When parched with heat, and ſinking with fatigue, my mouth and throat dry,

covered with ſweat and duſt, no friendly ſhade to ſhelter me from the ſcorching beams of the ſun, how have I wiſhed for a refreſhing ſtream, how reviving would have been the ſight even of the moſt ſtagnant lake; but frequently theſe were not to be found, and patience was the only remedy.

The European who enjoys a temperate climate, by whoſe ſide an ample river rolls on diſregarded, who is ſurrounded with plenty of every luxury that imagination can ſuggeſt, cannot form an idea of his ſituation, who feels the want of all theſe bleſſings he enjoys; or the ardour with which the traveller in Africa wiſhes for the cooling refreſhment of that element, which, from its abundance, he ſurveys with a careleſs eye.

How much did I congratulate myſelf on the poſſeſſion of my domeſtic animals; which, though they may appear uſeleſs, were

were of infinite ſervice to me. Faithful *Kees* ever attended my ſteps, and when I wandered from my waggons, natural inſtinct led him to ſome or other of thoſe deſirable roots or plants which I ſhould not otherwiſe have found; in default of the latter, with his paws he would dig in ſearch of the former; but his progreſs was ſlow, and I ever aſſiſted him with my dagger or knife, and then fairly divided our diſcovered treaſure.

Two other roots, not exceeding the thickneſs of a finger, but very long, were equally agreeable to me; they have a ſlight ſmell of fennel and aniſeed, and are very ſweet and tender, which made me prefer them when I was fortunate enough to meet with any. They are found in the colonies, and are known by the names of *Anys-Wortel* and *Vinkel-Worten*.

In ſome of the ſtony cantons, there

grows a kind of potatoe which the ſavages call *Kaa-Nap*; it is of an irregular figure, and muſt be ſucked to extract the juice, which is ſweet and milky. I have tried to dreſs them, but found, that like the others, they loſt in dreſſing their agreeable flavour, leaving nothing but an inſipid maſs. Some roots which I roaſted in aſhes, had very much the flavour of cheſnuts.

The number of wild fruits are few, thoſe I have met with being only inſipid berries, which may indeed tempt children, if we may judge by thoſe of our own country; who love to regale themſelves with the produce of the hedges: ſome of theſe are of a purging quality.

Though almoſt a ſtranger to one part of natural hiſtory, I ſhould have thought myſelf extremely reprehenſible and negligent in ſo diſtant a country, which had never

never been explored, to have omitted any occaſion of ſtudying the intereſting objects that ſurrounded me; and without being a botaniſt, I employed ſome time in diſcoveries relative to that ſcience; which, though it has nothing to do with the finer feelings of the ſoul, has the inſtruction and welfare of mankind for its object. When I found any bulbous roots, plants, or ſhrubs, whoſe flowers attracted my notice, I took particular care to procure them, ever ſaving the ſeed; and in my ſeveral incampments had made that ſtudy an agreeable recreation, and a means of varying my different purſuits. In one of my returns to Cape Town, having a valuable collection, Monſieur de Percheron, French agent at that place, remitted it from me (for the king's gardens) to that reſpectable family, whoſe name I dare not mention; to whom nature has diſcloſed her choiceſt ſecrets, and by conſigning her nobleſt treaſures to its care, has rank-

ed in the number of her principal favorites. Theſe plants never reached the place of their deſtination, as the agent of France informed me, the ſhip, to which they were conſigned, was caſt away.

I was more fortunate in the drawings I had made, and which I brought on my return. A very ſkilful botaniſt has informed me, that he is totally unacquainted with the greateſt part of them: theſe, on ſome future occaſion, I ſhall preſent to the public. And now let me return to details that are more pleaſing, and ſpeak again of the *Gonaquais*, for whom I had conceived a ſincere eſteem.

CHAP.

# CHAPTER VI.

THE METHOD OF COMPUTING TIME AMONG THE GONAQUAIS — THEIR MODE OF INTERMENT — DREAD OF THE SMALL POX — SOMETIMES ABANDON THEIR KRAALS — NO SUBORDINATION AMONG THEIR WARRIORS.

ON a ſlight view of the *Gonaquais*, it would be difficult to gueſs their age; for, though the old are ſometimes wrinkled, their hair is never grey; and I ſhould ſuppoſe that a man who had attained the age of ſeventy, would be looked on as ſomething extraordinary. They divide the year by the wet and dry ſeaſons, which is the general cuſtom among the

inhabitants of the tropics: they ſubdivide it by moons, never counting days when the number exceeds that of their fingers: a longer period of time, (yet leſs than the revolution of a moon), is marked by ſome particular occurrence; ſuch as a ſtorm, the killing of an elephant, an epidemical diſorder, an emigration, &c. They count the time of the day by the courſe of the ſun; for example, pointing with the finger, they ſay, "It was there, when I "departed; yonder, when I returned." Though this method is not very exact, it anſwers well enough for people who have no amorous rendezvous, which require a ſcrupulous exactitude; no law-ſuits to attend, no ſcandal to publiſh; who make no mean deſpicable court to proud ignorant patrons, nor have any theatrical pieces either to hiſs or commend: with calm tranquillity they beholdthe riſing or the ſetting ſun, unknowing and regardleſs of the pointed hour on the time-piece;

which

which is ever bringing joy to ſome few, but ſorrow to the greater number.

When a *Hottentot* is ſick, beſides the ligatures I have already mentioned, they have recourſe to ſome medicinal plants whoſe virtues they are well acquainted with; there may be ſome among them more ſkilful than others whom they conſult on theſe occaſions, but as there is certainly no ſcience that requires more intenſe ſtudy, more minute application than phyſic, (there being many internal maladies ariſing from different cauſes, which are not to be diſtinguiſhed from each other by outward appearances), they are often much embarraſſed in the application of theſe remedies; they take great care, however, to conceal their ignorance, and are as great adepts in grimace as any of our phyſicians can be, and as clearly demonſtrate (when the patient happens to die) that the diſeaſe was abſolutely incurable.

They

They are more ſkilful in the treatment of wounds, or even fractures; and it is very extraordinary to meet with a lame *Hottentot*. An idea of propriety among theſe ſavages, ever keeps thoſe who are indiſpoſed at a diſtance from the healthy; and it certainly never entered the imagination of a *Hottentot* to expoſe his diſtreſſes from a view of exciting commiſeration; indeed, it would be uſeleſs in a country where every one is naturally compaſſionate.

They have no idea of letting blood, or of its efficacy in many diſorders; nor do I think it would be poſſible to find one among them who would conſent to the operation. The coloniſt *Hottentots*, indeed, are accuſtomed to European manners, have acquired our diſeaſes, and adopted our remedies.

The famous Kolben has ſpoke of a number of operations performed by their doctors,

doctors, with a cuſtom (among the *Hottentots* of the deſert) of hanging about the neck of the patient the ſcalp of a ſheep, till it rots away, or of conſulting the entrails of the ſame animal; all theſe tales were certainly wrote to amuſe the ignorant, and are, indeed, calculated for no other purpoſe. Modes of divination are the uſual appendages of ſuperſtitious worſhip, but how can this exiſt where they have no religion, no idea of a ſuperior Being? The ſame author has given his phyſicians a rank ſuperior to his prieſts; as they are all the creatures of his own brain, he certainly had a right to do as he pleaſed with them; for the fact is, in theſe *Hoords* they have neither phyſician, nor prieſt, no ſuperiority of degree, nor any word in the *Hottentot* language that ſignifies in any manner theſe diſtinctions.

To ſhew how far the flights of imagination carried this viſionary, it is ſufficient

to

to read in his work, that a *Hottentot* doctor cured one of his patients of the leproſy by means of *Roman vitriol!*—How could theſe ſavages become acquainted with a ſalt which is procured by means of a chymical proceſs? To give belief to ſuch a ridiculous tale, we muſt ſuppoſe them acquainted with our arts, and furniſhed with alembics, furnaces, and all the appendages of pharmacy.

As ſoon as a *Hottentot* dies he is wrapped in his worſt *Kros*, his legs being bent in ſuch a manner as to be entirely covered with it; his relatives then carry him to a certain diſtance from the *Hoord*, and lay him in a hole dug for that purpoſe, which is never deep; covering him with earth, and then with ſtones, if it happens to be a ſituation where theſe can be procured. It is not to be imagined that ſuch a tomb can withſtand the efforts of the *jackal* or *hyæna*, and the body is often rooted up

and

and devoured. However incautiouſly they may fulfil this laſt duty, the *Hottentot* may appear excuſable when we recollect that ſome famous nations had a cuſtom of expoſing their dead on elevated towers, or in uncovered tombs, that the crows and vultures might carry them away.

The African in conſigning to the earth the inanimate remains of his friend or father, recommends to its penetrating ſalts the care of gently diſſolving the body; if his wiſhes are not always anſwered, and he finds the ſacred ſpot diſturbed, the precious depoſit gone, his afflictions, his lamentations, ſhew at once the piety of his manners, and natural humanity of his temper. When the chief of a *Hoord* dies, the only difference obſerved in his funeral is, that the heap of earth and ſtones which cover his body is much larger.

If the deceaſed was greatly eſteemed, the family

family he belonged to is plunged in ſorrow and conſternation; the night paſſes in ſcreams and howlings, mingled with imprecations againſt death. Every new comer augments the clamour, which at a diſtance might as well be taken for the tumultuous accents of joy as of deſpair: not that their grief is by any means equivocal on a nearer examination, as I have often ſeen them ſhed tears of unfeigned ſorrow on theſe occaſions.

Mr. Sparman has been witneſs in the colonies of a ſcene which he relates, thus, "Two old women ſhook, and beat with "their fiſts, one of their countrymen, who "was either dying or already dead; at the "ſame time ſcreaming reproaches and "conſolations in his ears." One ought not to ſuffer one's ſelf to be miſled by ſuch a relation. If theſe women had been perſuaded this young man was really dead, they would never have added to their lament-

mentations either ſhaking or blows; but theſe actions (which the doctor repreſents as the convulſive agitations of deſpair) were no other than a means of ſupplying the want of thoſe ſtimulating ſalts and eſſences which we make uſe of in Europe, when a perſon in a fainting fit can hardly be diſtinguiſhed from a corps. The ſhaking which the old women adminiſtered ſeemed an equally efficacious remedy, and apparently produced very ſalutary effects, ſince Mr. Sparman adds, "it wrought even "the reſurrection of the ſick perſon."

The ſmall-pox, which has ſo often cruelly ravaged the *Hottentot* colonies, never but once made its baleful appearance among the *Gonaquais*, when it ſwept off half their people; and they are now ſo apprehenſive of its approach, that on the firſt news of its having attacked any of the colonies, they abandon every thing they cannot take with them, and fly into the heart

heart of their deſerts; for convinced they have no remedy to cure this dangerous diſorder, ſhould it be a father, a wife, a child, it is immaterial, they are deaf to the voice of nature, and leave them to their unhappy fate; when deprived of every aſſiſtance, ſhould they eſcape the diſorder, they muſt periſh with hunger.—This fear ſo powerful among and natural to a ſavage people, is no impeachment of their humanity; the fearful devaſtation of their *Hoords*, ever preſent to their imagination, is calculated to make them neglect the moſt ſacred duties; but we are diſguſted to read in the ancient authors, and to find a modern voyager repeat after them, that the *Hottentots*, when they chooſe to change their habitations, abandon without pity their old people, and every thing that would contribute to the retarding of their march. This aſſertion muſt not be truſted without limitation, nor the rule conſidered as general; it is only practiſed

when

when they find themſelves in the fatal ſituation, I have already deſcribed, or in war. On other occaſions what motive can they have for being ſo precipitate in their march? I confeſs I never ſaw any reaſon to believe the *Hottentots* would act thus, but when urged by the moſt cruel neceſſity. When attacked by a power of ſuperior ſtrength, unable to repel force by force, they eſcape as they can; in that ſituation they have no other reſource; they muſt forſake their old and ſick, or ſtay and periſh with them; and what man can be ſo ill inſtructed in the calamities of war, as to impute to the *Hottentot* as a crime that neceſſity under which an European muſt act in the ſame manner? I ſhall go further: the ſavages do not ſcruple to do the ſame when ſuddenly attacked by famine, which is frequently more cruel in its effects than either war or peſtilence, and conſtrains them to abandon ſome few individuals, which they can by

no means ſave, as neceſſary victims to the preſervation of the reſt; even thoſe who fly to ſeek ſome fertile ſpot, are far from being ſure to eſcape this dreadful ſcourge, more than three-fourths of them ſometimes periſhing by thirſt or fatigue among the barren rocks, or on the parched ſandy deſerts; while the wretched ſurvivors wander frequently to a prodigious diſtance, ſupported by the moſt ſlender means. Theſe three motives lead the *Hottentots* to practiſe a barbarity to which they find themſelves conſtrained by a neceſſity, more powerful than even love or duty. Their natural timidity, and love of life, drowns the voice of nature; but becauſe, for a moment ſhe is not heard, ſhall we conclude they are void of natural affections? Theſe public calamities (which they have no means of withſtanding or appeaſing) operating on a people, into whoſe minds education has not inſtilled the neceſſity of fortitude, or force of relative duties,

prompts,

prompts them, from a motive of ſelf-preſervation, to a precipitate eſcape; and what we ſhould do on theſe occaſions, ought not to be formed into a law to judge them by.

No one will add, I hope, as a fourth inſtance of their barbarity, thoſe indiſpenſable emigrations to which an inclement ſeaſon may oblige them. An extraordinary courſe of hot weather ſometimes dries up all the ſprings and lakes in the environs of their *Kraal*; or, by having burned up their paſtures, threats them with an approaching famine. Either of theſe cauſes is ſufficient to make them change the place of their abode; but theſe neceſſary emigrations though ſudden, are always made with the greateſt order and tranquillity. They drive off their flocks and herds, the aged and infirm are placed on their oxen, and no one is left behind. The beſt effects are ſent off firſt: thus they travel peaceably along, and ſettle at

the firſt plāce they come to, which they think will anſwer their purpoſe. I have often met with whole *Hoords*, that have been obliged to tranſport themſelves from one or other of theſe cauſes; both the old and ſick were of the party: how many times with a ſmall quantity of tobacco, or ſtill more agreeable, with a few glaſſes of brandy, have I rejoiced the hearts of theſe poor people, and made them ſmile in the midſt of their calamities; or, with ſtill greater expreſſions of ſenſibility, have I ſeen the tears of gratitude tracing each other down their cheeks; and afterwards, when in the courſe of my journey I have arrived at the ſpot they had abandoned, how have I examined every part of its environs, but could never find any marks of that cruel inſenſibility with which they are reproached. All their huts, effects, domeſtic animals, every thing that appertained to them was removed.

The

The children, or in default of theſe, the next of kin, take poſſeſſion of whatever a perſon may happen to have at the time of his death; but the quality of chief is not hereditary; he is always elected by the *Hoord*, and his power is very limited. Free to do his dependents every benefit, he is reſtrained from doing them the ſmalleſt injury. He is not honoured with any exterior mark of diſtinction; he enjoys no privilege above the reſt, except that of being excuſed from taking his turn in watching the cattle who are feeding in the paſtures. In their councils they take his advice, if it appears good to the majority, otherwiſe they pay no regard to it. When they go to battle they have neither order nor diviſions; neither generals nor captains; all are ſoldiers, all are officers; every one attacks or defends, as he ſees occaſion; the boldeſt march at the head; and when they chance to gain a victory, they never give to one man the whole

honour of an action, which has been atchieved by the joint efforts and courage of them all: in theſe inſtances it is the whole *Hoord* that triumphs.

The *Gonaquais* is the only nation among all thoſe I have ſeen, who may be conſidered as abſolutely free; at ſome future time, perhaps, they will be obliged to remove farther up the country, or to receive laws from their neighbours. Eaſtward the lands are generally good, and the coloniſts are ever endeavouring to enlarge their limits on that ſide, and one day, no doubt, their avarice will ſucceed. Woe to that peaceable and happy people when that period ſhall arrive! oppreſſions, maſſacres, all the horrors attending unjuſt invaſion, will obliterate every veſtige of their liberty.

Theſe misfortunes have been experienced by all thoſe *Hoords*, of which the firſt authors have given an account.—

Weakened

Weakened by frequent diſmemberments, they have at length become abſolutely dependant on the Dutch; and the primitive manners, original cuſtoms, and hiſtory of this people, would either have been forgotten or conſidered as fables, had not ſome travellers, curious to diſcover the remains of them, had courage to penetrate the deſerts of the great *Namaquais*, whoſe barren rocks, whoſe ſteep and ſteril mountains produce no plant, no tree that can tempt the ſpeculative avidity of the Europeans.

# CHAPTER VII.

HOTTENTOT DANCES—MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS DESCRIBED—UNJUSTLY CHARGED WITH INCEST—DESCRIPTION OF THEIR PERSONS—THEIR HOSPITALITY.

THE nations cited by former authors under the names of the *Gungemans*, and the *Koopmans* never had any exiſtence. The word *Gungemans* has no ſignification in the *Hottentot* language. Some traveller, who underſtood nothing of their tongue, made a miſtake in writing this word, which is properly *Goed-mans*, and ſignifies, in Dutch, good-men, or good-people; a quality

quality which was attributed by the firſt coloniſts to the *Hottentots* in general, becauſe they found them a peaceable and accommodating people.

*Koopmans* was a name given to thoſe with whom they eſtabliſhed their firſt traffic; this name is compoſed of two words, which ſignify in Dutch, merchant, or trader, and has no more relation to one country than another. Thus, when a traveller is utterly unacquainted with the language of a country, he makes miſtakes in the orthography, and inſtead of the name of a ſavage nation, often preſents his readers with a barbariſm.

The manners and cuſtoms of different diſtant countries will never be properly deſcribed by any one who is ignorant of their ſeveral languages; if, for example, the authors who have advanced that the *Hottentots* adored the moon, had comprehended

hended the ſenſe of the words they ſang by its light, they muſt have been convinced they have no reference to homage, prayers, or invocations; they would have known, that the ſubject of theſe ſongs is ever an adventure, which has happened, either to an individual among them, or elſe to their own, or the neighbouring *Hoord*; it is ſung in the extempory manner of the negroes, and they might ſing the whole night on the ſame ſubject, by repeating according to their cuſtom, the ſame words a thouſand times over. They prefer the night to day becauſe it is cooler, and on that account more proper for their dances and diverſions.

In dancing they form themſelves into a ring by taking hold of each others hands, which is larger or ſmaller according to the number that compoſe it. The women and men are in equal number, and ſtand alternately. This chain formed, they turn different

different ways; at intervals they clap their hands altogether, without any interruption to the cadence; their voices unite with the ſound of their inſtruments, often repeating Hoo! Hoo! which is the general cadence. Sometimes one of the dancers quitting the extremity of the circle, places himſelf in the center, where he begins a dance which bears ſome reſemblance to an Engliſh hornpipe; the whole merit conſiſting in its being executed with rapidity and preciſion, without ſtirring from the ſpot.

Sometimes they quit hands, and follow one another careleſsly, affecting an air of melancholy and concern, the head hung upon one ſhoulder, the eyes caſt mournfully upon the ground; theſe geſtures give place in a moment, to the moſt wild and lively demonſtrations of joy and gaiety: this contraſt when well expreſſed delights and enchants them. It may be perceived

that

that theſe dances are but an aſſemblage of pantomimical expreſſions, very ſtrange and amuſing. During the whole time of its continuance, the dancers make a kind of monotonous humming, which is never interrupted, except to join with the ſpectators in the favourite chorus of Hoo! Hoo! which ſeems the very ſoul and ſpirit of this pompous and whimſical melody. They uſually finiſh all by a general ballat; that is, the circle is broken, and they all dance pell mell together, every one in his own way; it is then their ſtrength and addreſs is moſt conſpicuous, the dancers endeavouring to excell each other in thoſe perilous feats of activity, which in our theatres excite exclamations of applauſe, and which are equally amuſing, and not leſs applauded in the open air by an audience of uninformed Africans. The inſtruments, which for their ſuppoſed excellence, are moſt admired here, are, the *goura*, or *joum-joum*, the *rabouquin*, and the *romelpat*.

The

The *goura* has the form of the *Hottentot* bow, and is about the ſame ſize. They tie a cord, made of the entrails of ſome animal, to one of the extremities, the other end of it is faſtened by a knot in the quill of a feather, which is ſlit and flattened. This feather, when ſpread, forms an iſoſcele triangle, which may be about two inches long. It is at the baſe of this triangle that the hole is made that retains the cord, and the point of the quill being folded back, is faſtened by a ſmall thong to the other end of the bow. This cord may be more or leſs tightened according to the will of the muſician; but when ſeveral *gouras* are played together, they contrive never to have them in uniſon with each other. This would never be thought a wind inſtrument from its appearance, though it certainly is one. The figure of it may be ſeen in the Plate of the *Gonaquai Hottentot*.

While

While playing on it, it is held much in manner of the hunting-horn, the end of the bow where the feather is placed, being applied to the mouth; and both in aſpirating and drawing his breath, the player produces a ſound which is tolerably melodious; but even the ſavages, who ſucceed the beſt with it, never play any regular tune.

I took a delight in ſeeing one of my people, named John, (who paſſed for a very expert muſician), regale his comrades for ſeveral hours together, who, tranſported with his performance, would interrupt him from time to time, crying out, "O how "charming that was! play it once more!" John ever ready to oblige, began again, but never could repeat what had produced ſuch an effect on his auditors; for as I before obſerved, it is impoſſible to play any ſet ſtrain on this inſtrument, whoſe notes

notes are the effect of chance, and depend in a great meaſure on the quality of the feather.

The beſt for this purpoſe are taken from the wing of the *buſtard*; when I happened to kill one of theſe, I always took care to ſupply our orcheſtra with a number of them.

The *goura* is called by a different name, when played on by a woman, it then acquires the title of a *joum-joum*. Seated on the ground, ſhe places it perpendicularly before her, in the manner of a harp; the bottom of it is held by paſſing one of her feet between the bow and the cord, obſerving not to touch the latter; with her left hand ſhe graſps the middle of the bow, and while ſhe blows upon the feather, ſtrikes the ſtring with a little wand, of about five or ſix inches length, which ſhe has in her other hand, and which produces

duces ſome variety in the modulation; but the ear muſt be at no great diſtance from the inſtrument to mark diſtinctly the gradation of its ſounds. This manner of holding the *goura* produces a very good effect, and gives a grace to the *Hottentot* who plays upon it.

The *rabouquin* is a triangular piece of wood, on which are extended three ſtrings, faſtened to pegs that can be tightened or ſlackened at pleaſure, in the manner of our European inſtruments; it is, indeed, a kind of guittar; any other than a *Hottentot* might, perhaps, make ſomething of it, and render its muſic agreeable, but here they are content to twang it with their fingers, and produce ſounds without art or order.

The *Rolempot* is the moſt noiſy of all their inſtruments. It is made of the hollowed trunk of a tree, from two to three feet high;

high; over one end they extend the ſkin of a ſheep well tanned, which they beat with their hands, or rather, with their fiſts; and ſometimes with a ſtick. This inſtrument, which may be heard at a great diſtance, it muſt be confeſſed, is by no means a maſter-piece of contrivance; but would be a tolerable method, in any place, of ſupplying by noiſe the want of taſte.

Perhaps I am too particular in my deſcription of the dances and muſical inſtruments of the *Hottentots*, which are not very curious: but details that tend to throw ſome light on the manners and diſpoſitions of theſe Africans, I thought, ſhould not be entirely neglected.

The ſavages, who are under the immediate guidance of nature, have no need of the mingled harmony of our orcheſtres to excite in their aſſemblies the moſt lively demonſtrations of joy and pleaſure; their

contracted and monotonous muſic ſufficiently anſwers their purpoſe; enlivened by its ſound they exert themſelves to the utmoſt, and feel no want of better.

One of our modern authors, who has made a rule of ſtudying the genius of the people at the ſame time that he deſcribed their country, in his *Select Geographical Readings*, obſerves, with great ſagacity, "that in a civiliſed country, ſinging and "dancing are two arts, but in ſavage wilds "they are the natural expreſſions of con-"cord and friendſhip, of tenderneſs and "pleaſure. We are taught by maſters," adds this learned writer, "to modulate "our voices, and to move our limbs in "cadence; the ſavage has no maſter but "his paſſions, his heart, and nature; that "which he feels, we feign: thus, when "the ſavage ſings or dances he is always "happy."

I have

I have before obſerved, that the *Hottentots* never aſſemble to divert themſelves till night, excluſive of the reaſon I have already given for this practice, their daily occupations allow them no other opportunity; every one has ſome indiſpenſable duties to perform during the day. They muſt watch their flocks and herds, which are feeding at a diſtance in the fields, not only to prevent their wandering, but to protect them from the beaſts of prey, who are continually on the watch for them.—They muſt milk their cows and ewes, fabricate their mats, gather wood for their fires, dreſs their meat, and ſearch for roots; theſe latter occupations belong particularly to the women. The men hunt, examine the ſnares they ſet for game, &c. make their arrows, and all the inſtruments of which they have need; and though theſe inſtruments and neceſſaries are in general clumſy, and ill made, they require much time and labour

in the fabrication, becauſe they are deſtitute of a multitude of tools which would facilitate and ſhorten theſe operations; indeed, their addreſs in general is much leſs to be admired than their patience. It would be aſtoniſhing if theſe people, whoſe company I have ſo much frequented, and among whom I have lived ſo long, ſhould have had the addreſs and cunning to conceal from me, ſo artfully, that I could never diſcover, either by their diſcourſe or manner of living, any appearance of that ſuperſtition with which they have been charged; for I am far from conſidering as religious rites, certain privations which they impoſe on themſelves, and which appear very natural when once we have diſcovered their reaſons for them. For example, they ſcarce ever eat hare, or the gazel, called *duykers*. In their opinion the hare is an animal of a diguſting form, and the fleſh of the *duykers* appears too black; beſides this, theſe animals

animals are always exceſſive lean, which would be a ſufficient reaſon for their rejection of them. But what is to me a convincing proof that it is no chimerical idea that prevents their making uſe of this food is, that when pinched by hunger, I have ſeen them have recourſe to it, and think themſelves happy it was to be procured.

When we ſee a Hollander diſguſted at the ſight of a plate of perriwinkles, or the beſt cooked fricaſee of frogs, (which the French think extreme good eating), ſhould the Batavian diſguſt be conſidered as a religious abſtinence?

Before we announce, as an eſſential rite among the *Hottentots*, the ceremony of cutting off a joint from their fingers or toes, before we attribute their ſemi-caſtration to the ſame motive, it would certainly be reaſonable to eſtabliſh the exiſt-

ence of theſe cuſtoms." Kolben had heard them ſpoken of among a number of others, but never endeavoured to inveſtigate the truth of them; this is ſufficiently proved by his attributing theſe cuſtoms to all the *Hottentots* indiſcriminately. M. Sparman is likewiſe guilty of an error when he affirms, in contradiction to Kolben, that no ſuch practice as ſemi-caſtration ever had any exiſtence among them. Both theſe cuſtoms are actually made uſe of in two *Hoords* ſituate to the north of the Cape, under the twenty-eighth degree of latitude, known by the name of the *Gaiſſiquais*, and the *Koraquais* cantons, in which I found the *Girafes*, of which I ſhall ſpeak in my ſecond voyage; and it is certain Kolben never penetrated into thoſe parts, except in a dream. Doctor Sparman has ſuffered himſelf to be deceived, in reſpect to the *Gonaquais*, ſince he is inclined to believe that theſe *Hoords* make uſe of circumciſion: the coloniſts aſſured me as they did

did him, that this was a fact; but this aſſurance was, with me, a powerful reaſon to diſtruſt it; but I have ſince had an opportunity of ſatisfying myſelf, and can affirm that they have a quite contrary appearance, which muſt certainly have eſcaped the obſervation of thoſe who have attributed this cuſtom to them.

I may ſay the ſame of thoſe peculiarities in the formation of their women, which former authors have dwelt ſo much on in in their hiſtories, or rather fables, of theſe people; and which is cuſtomary in a *Hoord* which I have viſited, I may ſay it is faſhionable; for ſo far from being the work of nature, it ſhould be regarded as the moſt monſtrous and extraordinary refinement that was ever invented by caprice, and which is confined to this ſmall portion of the habitable globe.

Some ancient authors have aſſured us

that the *Hottentots* ſleep altogether in the ſame hut, without regard to difference of age or ſex, or feeling that invincible horror which ſets bounds to the paſſions among near relations. It is true, that theſe ſavages, confined to what is ſtrictly neceſſary, have no idea of concealing a monſtrous inclination under an outward appearance of ſcrupulous decency. They have not among them one department for the brother, another for the ſiſter; an apartment for the mother, another for the ſons: but to conclude, becauſe they have only one mat, on which to repoſe themſelves after the fatigues of the day, that they live in the manner of the brutes, is to commit an outrage againſt nature, and to calumniate innocence. It could only be an author badly inſtructed or ill-intentioned, that could give way to ſuch infamous ſuſpicions,—Yes, the whole family inhabits one ſcanty hut—the father ſleeps with his daughter—the brother with his ſiſter—

ſiſter—the mother with her ſon—but on the return of Aurora every one riſes with a pure heart; without having cauſe to bluſh before the great Father of beings, or any of thoſe creatures whom he has ſealed with his divine image. The ſavage is neither a brute nor unnatural; the true monſter is he who aſſerts the exiſtence of a crime wherever he ſuppoſes one, truſting implicitly to the odious teſtimony of his own conſcious depravity.

I have viſited a number of ſavage nations, and I always found the greateſt modeſty and circumſpection among their women, I might add among their men: the author that I have ſo often been obliged to contradict, renders homage to this truth, when he affirms, "that they "will judge ill, who ſuppoſe theſe ſavages "have as little modeſty as covering."

I have before remarked that their com-

merce

merce with the whites has been the means of corrupting their manners: the *Hottentots* of the colonies furniſh a convincing proof of this aſſertion, thoſe of the deſert being quite a different ſort of people. At ſome future period, perhaps, they will be ſeduced by the ill example of their neighbours.

When Mr. Forſter, in his voyage round the world with Captain Cook, informs us that the women of Eaſter-Iſland were ſhameleſs courteſans; he does not endeavour to conceal that the ſailors were guilty of the moſt infamous debauches with them: but he might have added, without ſcruple, that female ſavages, who have been once viſited and corrupted by Europeans, afterwards give themſelves up to them without reſerve.

When the deſire of information has prompted me to make inquiries among theſe

theſe people reſpecting the above-mentioned inceſtious communications, I have uniformly received ſome ſuch anſwer as this: "Do you then confound us with "the brutes? they, alone, are capable of what you mention!" Could I after this be deceived in this particular; or refuſe to attribute virtue to thoſe who never heard the name, or ſaw the immenſe commentaries compoſed on the idea it contains? This innate ſentiment in the heart of man, that neither education has enlightened nor example corrupted, was conferred on him by way of diſtinction, and to mark the ſuperiority of his nature. The horror of uniting with his own blood, is one of the moſt ſtriking traits of character by which the Creator has been pleaſed to mark the difference between the human and the brute creation; and nothing but the moſt glaring depravity can induce them to break down this almoſt inſurmountable barrier. I dare aſſert, that if there is a corner of

the

the world where propriety of conduct and manners is to be adored, one muſt ſeek its temples in the midſt of deſarts. The ſavage has received his principles neither from education or prejudice, he owes them to ſimple nature; love with him is not (as in civiliſed countries) a tumultuous paſſion, which leads to diſorders, ravages, and wrongs. But in vain, by the example of Buffon, ſhould I endeavour to root out this malady of heated imaginations; I ſhould never be able to overturn an altar loaded with the ſplendid offerings of the poets and noveliſts; I ſhould have too many prejudices to contend with. The deity, who owes his birth to theſe chymeras, would call all his votaries to the attack, and never forgive the ſacrilege.

A phyſiognomiſt, or if you will, a modern wit, might divert himſelf, and companions of a ſimilar diſpoſition, by giving the *Hottentot* a place in the ſcale of being, be-

between a human creature, and an *Ouräng-Outang*, but I cannot conſent to do him that wrong, being ſenſible that he does not deſerve to be ſo degraded. I have found his perſon agreeable, becauſe I knew his ſoul to be reſpectable. I muſt own his features are different from thoſe of other men, the prominence of his cheek bones makes his face appear very broad in that part, this contraſted with the narrowneſs of his jaw, which gradually leſſens towards the chin, gives him an appearance of megerneſs that makes his head ſeem diſproportioned and too little for his body, which is in general fat and bulky. His noſe is broad and flat, his noſtrils very open, his mouth large, but filled with ſmall teeth of an amazing whiteneſs, his eyes large and fine, inclining a little towards his hoſe, like the Chineſe. His hair, both to the ſight and touch, reſembles wool, is black as ebony, and in no great quantity; yet they are continually thin-

thinning of it. His eye-brows, which are very ſcantily ſet, do not require that care. The beard only grows on the upper lip, and on the extremity of the chin; this they never fail to pull out by the roots, which gives them an air of effeminacy that, joined to the natural ſoftneſs of their character, tends very much to deprive them of that haughty aſpect which has procured men in general, the title of lords of the creation.

The *Hottentot* is perfectly well made, his carriage graceful and active, very different from the ſavages of South America, who appear only the rough draughts of nature.

The women, though more delicate, have the ſame features, are equally well made, their necks beautifully formed, their hands ſmall and their feet well ſhaped; though, in general, they wear no ſandals.

They

They have a ſoft tone of voice, and their ſpeech is not unpleaſing. They make uſe of an infinity of geſture when they talk, which ſhows their arms to great advantage.

The natural timidity of the *Hottentot*, prevents his being enterpriſing, while his *ſang froid*, and deliberate method of ſpeaking, gives him an air of reſerve, even in his hours of joy and relaxation; when, on the contrary, all the other black or tawny nations, give way to lively pleaſure, and the moſt expanded gaiety; careleſs to inaction and lazineſs, tending his flocks and procuring himſelf food is his only ſtudy. When he hunts, he muſt not be conſidered as a ſportſman, but as one oppreſſed with hunger; in ſhort, he is forgetful of the paſt and regardleſs of the future, the preſent alone employs and intereſts his thoughts: but he is good, generous and hoſpitable; thoſe who travel among them,

are

are ſure to find meat and lodging; they will receive you with pleaſure, but never exact a recompenſe.

If the traveller has far to go, and the *Hottentot* knows he will encounter no *Hoords* by the way, he will furniſh him with as much proviſion as his means will permit, and enable him to continue his journey to the place of deſtination.

Before the arrival of the Europeans at the Cape, commerce was unknown to the *Hottentots*; perhaps they had not even an idea of exchange; but the appearance of tobacco and beads, innitiated them into mercantile miſteries; thoſe new luxuries in time became wants, which the *Hottentots* of the colonies procure for them; for I muſt obſerve, that fond as they are of theſe trifles, they will rather do without, than ſtir a ſtep to fetch them: a uſeful leſſon to thoſe who drag through life

life in ſearch of, and agitated by chimeras.

Such were theſe people, or at leaſt ſuch they appeared to me, in all the innocence of paſtoral life; and they yet offer to my imagination the idea of human nature in its infancy.

A ſublime trait, which I ſhall next deſcribe (although it belongs to my ſecond voyage farther north of the Cape, and toward the weſtern ſide) will finiſh the picture of this people, which I have endeavoured to draw with all poſſible truth and candour; without eloquence it is true, but equally void of enthuſiaſm; unadorned with vain declamation, but with that frankneſs and ſimplicity which is dear to me, and which I ſhall ever profeſs.

## CHAPTER VIII.

STRIKING INSTANCE OF GOOD-NATURE—GENERAL REFLECTIONS ON SAVAGES—ACCOUNT OF THE BASTARD-WHITES.

A Conſiderable *Hoord* of the *Kaminou-Kais* came to viſit the camp, with that frank air of confidence which is the characteriſtic of men who have not been rendered ſuſpicious by the deceit or injuries of their fellow-creatures.

Conſtrained to be frugal in the uſe of my proviſions, it was not poſſible to regale every one with brandy, the company was

was too numerous, and I would not without imprudence appear generous; I preſented a glaſs to the chief, and to thoſe among them, who, by their figure, or ſtill more by their age, appeared the moſt reſpectable: but to what means will not beneficence have recourſe! how ingenious is ſhe in finding opportunities to demonſtrate her exiſtence! What was my aſtoment, after having obſerved that each kept his liquor in his glaſs, to ſee them approach their comrades who had not received any, and diſtribute it from mouth to mouth! I muſt confeſs I was inchanted by this unexpected and affecting ſtroke of native generoſity. Is there a heart ſo void of feeling that it would remain untouched by ſuch a ſcene? or eyes that would not have furniſhed tears of ſenſibility? Tranſported with admiration, I embraced the chief, and thoſe who like him had diſtributed my gift to their ſurrounding friends. Vain talkers! elegant

coquets and beaus, perfumed with all the eſſences of Flora! you, I know, will ſhrink with horror at the idea; but, thank Heaven, I have not your qualms, your faſtidious refinements; and my worthy *Kaminou-Kais* gave me no ſentiment of diſguſt in this unpremeditated and fraternal expreſſion of regard.

I can never call to mind, without emotion, theſe reſpectable people, and ſeveral others among, whom I have ſeen the ſame ceremony repeated: when we have bid adieu, and I ſaw them returning home content and happy, "Favored mortals!" have I exclaimed, "long, long, may you "poſſeſs your precious innocence; but "live unknown! Poor ſavages! regret "not, being born under a burning ſky, "on a barren ſoil, which ſcarce produces "the bramble and the heath; but rather "conſider your ſituation as a ſignal favour "of Providence, your deſerts will never

"tempt

" tempt European cupidity; unite your-
" ſelves with thoſe happy nations, who,
" like you, are ſtrangers to them; bury,
" and efface even the ſmalleſt traces of that
" yellow duſt which forms itſelf in your
" rocks and mingles with your ſtreams,
" ſhould it be diſcovered you are loſt;
" know it is the ſcourge of the earth, the
" ſource of crimes, and dread above all
" things, the approach of an Almagro,
" a Pizarro, or a Ferhando Cortez."

In a ſtate of nature man is eſſentially good; why ſhould the *Hottentot* be an exception to this rule? It is without reaſon that he is accuſed of being cruel, he is only vindictive; too ſenſible of the wrong that it offered him, can any thing be more natural than to repel force by force? It is ridiculous to expect from theſe children of nature the practice of our refined humanity, whoſe rules, indeed, we are more ready to expect than

to perform. What is the law of retaliation, the only one we knew before we began to be philoſophers, but the right of rendering injury for injury, and depriving him of life whoſe attempts we dread upon our own?

Suppoſe the ſavages of Africa and America ſhould chance to think themſelves unhappy becauſe deſtitute of our arts, our riches, and all the reſources of our ingenuity; ſuppoſe they ſhould aſſemble from all parts, armed with deſtructive weapons, invade Europe, and endeavour to chaſe us from our poſſeſſions; with what temper ſhould we receive the barbarians? what treatment ſhould we beſtow on their attempt? Yet ſuch has been our practice with reſpect to them; ſuch have been the temptations to our enterpriſes in the three quarters of the globe, which have been crowned with more ſucceſs than they deſerved. Where-

ever

ever we have thought fit to eſtabliſh ourſelves, we have reduced the unhappy natives to ſlavery or flight; we have appropriated to our own uſe, without ſcruple, whatever appeared to anſwer our purpoſe; when they have ſeized the hour of vengeance, and in proportion to their wrongs have given way to their reſentment—too much blinded by our intereſt or prejudice, to conſider the provocations they have received, we dare to load them with the opprobrious epithets of barbarians and anthropophagites, nouriſhed by murder, delighting in human blood.

To what imprudence may we attribute the death of that celebrated navigator, Captain Cook! I am pleaſed to find, that his bold and enterpriſing character, with the knowledge of the power he poſſeſſed, never carried him to the commiſſion of any culpable exceſſes, though in the end he became the victim of them,

by the ardent deſire that exiſted among thoſe iſlanders, to revenge themſelves on his undiſciplined followers.

The ſailors on all occaſions had made too free with the women; this was too great an outrage to remain long unnoticed, nothing being more likely to irritate theſe ſavages, and even through the ſmoak of their cannon, while his thundering artillery ſounded in their ears, the chief is known and maſſacred in the midſt of his people, for not having been able in time to ſuppreſs theſe diſorders.

The firſt ſentiment we ſhould endeavour to inſtil into the mind of ſavages, among whom we wiſh to ſojourn, is confidence; to acquire it, we muſt be humane, beneficent, never abuſing their confidence, neither inſpiring them with fear, nor ſeeming to entertain any of them; they will give every thing where nothing is exacted.

acted. In addition to this, we muſt be ſufficiently maſter of our paſſions to obſerve the moſt ſevere continence with regard to their women, for if once they are jealous, they become implacable enemies, and if they are not, their complaiſance in this particular, puts you too much on an equality; you depreciate yourſelf in their opinion, and loſe that convenient ſuperiority which has dazzled them. In countries where jealouſy is not general, there are always ſome individuals infected with it; and it has been judiciouſly obſerved, that thoſe nations who are moſt exempt from this paſſion are the moſt diſſolute in their manners.

In order to appear to advantage with a ſavage people, we ſhould take care to value ourſelves leaſt of all on the ſuperiority of our arms; for why ſhould we endeavour to render ourſelves redoubtable to thoſe we do not fear?

In

In the midſt of our precautions we ought to preſerve an appearance of calmneſs and ſerenity, never employing the force of our arms, but to render them a ſervice, either in providing them with game, or aſſiſting to deſtroy the beaſts of prey that moleſt their flocks.

With theſe precautions you may quit a *Kraal* with the greateſt ſecurity, certain that your departure will be regretted, and that gratitude will recal you inceſſantly to their remembrance. Some among them will not be able to perſuade themſelves to part with you, they will quit their home, and accompany you to the next *Hoord*, with whom, upon the advantageous teſtimony of your guides, you will be ſure to meet with the ſame affection, the ſame endeavours to ſerve you; hoſpitality will welcome you to their abode, and your preſence will occaſion a holiday among them.

Governed

Governed by theſe peaceful maxims, I have traverſed a ſmall part of the immenſe ſpace of the earth, and could have penetrated into every part of Africa, had not inſurmountable obſtacles oppoſed, which all my cares could not have provided againſt, and which it is unneceſſary to explain.

The more I ſaw the utility of theſe maxims, the more I was convinced that having aſſociates in ſuch enterprizes muſt riſk the rendering of them abortive; my plan was fixed how to meet dangers, and apply a remedy to them; ſurrounded with companions equal in power, I could not flatter myſelf that they would always embrace my advice, and the folly or miſconduct of one night be the ruin of us all, if I failed now, I had only my own to blame.

The *Hottentots* have been repreſented as

as a nation miſerably poor, ſuperſtitious; ferocious, indolent, and naſty to exceſs; in ſhort, authors have reviled them in every particular.

If there ſhould happen among theſe general aſſertions to be one that has ſome reſemblance to truth, it would certainly be more depended on were they to ſuppreſs all the ill-natured exaggerations which have ariſen from the abſurd tedious tales of the coloniſts, who take delight in deceiving thoſe ſtrangers who hope to obtain inſtruction by liſtening to their fables. One ſhould ſpeak only from experience, nor aſſert any thing as a fact, which we have not had occular demonſtration of.

It is for want of this precaution, for example, that the work of doctor Sparman (which is very eſtimable in more reſpects than one) contains, among a number of inter-

intereſting and well wrote obſervations, thoſe apocryphal recitals of chaſing lions, elephants, &c. which have not the leaſt appearance of truth; and that he ſpeaks of the unicorn, which a coloniſt, perhaps, had deſcried on ſome uninhabitable rock, and ſubſtitutes the ſquare for the round form of the huts in *Caffraria*, which he never viſited.

One ought to obſerve, in favour of this learned man, that his own candour and probity made him take thoſe facts for inconteſtable that had once been certified by a coloniſt; *Jan-Kock*, particularly, whom he announces for the moſt ready and judicious obſerver he had ever met with, never could expect the praiſe he received for furniſhing him with errors which have made many people range with the works of Kolben, a book of great utility in many reſpects; and that would have been unexceptionable had the author confined himſelf

ſelf to thoſe particulars he had an opportunity of obſerving. I render homage to truth when I find it in doctor Sparman, and place thoſe miſtakes which I meet with to the account of his informer; but when one or the other aſſures me that "he has never ſeen the *Hottentots* wipe or "clean their ſkin; that inſtead of waſhing "their hands and arms, they rub them "with cow-dung; even up to the ſhoulders; that this unction is not conceived "to be neceſſary, but purely ornamental; "that the duſt and filth, mingled with the "greaſe with which they anoint themſelves, adheres to the ſkin, and is con-"tinually corroding it, &c." And afterwards, when Mr. Sparman aſſures us, he never ſaw them waſh or clean themſelves, I cannot help remarking, that this is a very light method of reaſoning, and will never paſs for ſound logic. Suppoſe I was to aver in my turn, I had never remarked that cow-dung was reckoned an ornament among

among the *Hottentots*; that I had never ſeen their ſkin corroded with filth and greaſe; this negative aſſertion would not convince any one, nor decide the queſtion in diſpute.

No one attempts to controvert a quality which theſe ſavages all poſſeſs (men, women, and children, without exception) of being the moſt expert ſwimmers and divers; muſt not we naturally conclude, that the cuſtom they obſerve of being in the water ſeveral times in the courſe of the day, neceſſarily occaſions a degree of cleanlineſs, which gives very little time either for their unctions or the duſt to corrode and injure the ſkin? The aſſiduity with which a female *Gonaquais* decorates herſelf, is a ſufficient proof that they are careful of their perſons, and wiſh to render themſelves pleaſing; all that can be ſaid on the ſubject is, that the means they uſe to accompliſh this purpoſe are ridiculous;

bu

but even in confeſſing thus much, might it not be reaſonable to enquire whether, the heat of the climate does not render ſome kind of unction neceſſary?

Their habiliments, it is true, are but the ſpoils either of tame or wild animals; but, as I have already obſerved, they never neglect (as we have been taught to believe) the care of freeing them from all impurities before they are converted into habits.

The *Hottentot* is neither poor nor miſerable; he is not poor, becauſe his deſires never extend beyond his knowledge, which is very confined; he never feels the ſting of neceſſity aggravated by cutting compariſons; a perfect uniformity in recourſes renders the fate of all equal; in a time of plenty every one is happy, when ſcarcity prevails they are all conſtrained to retrench. The painful compariſon of

riches

riches mounted on a car of gold, while poverty is training her tatters in the duſt, never wrings his heart; it is, indeed, an idea that never entered his imagination.

The ſpectacle of indigence reduced to deſpair, that torture to ſympathiſing diſpoſitions, does not preſent itſelf to his eyes under a thouſand different diſtreſſing forms; it is a mortification which human nature in its ſavage ſtate never experiences, and if in poliſhed ſocieties man is in time habituated to the ſight of miſery, and ſo far hardened that he can look with all the apathy of optimiſm on that inequality of condition which is ſo diſguſting, ſo much to be lamented, it is becauſe he is no longer the acknowledged child of nature; ſhe knows him not, ſhe turns from him with diſguſt, aſhamed of her work, which other hands have ſo disfigured.

After having, by ſo long a digreſſion, interrupted the recital of the little events

of my journey, in order to eſtabliſh ſome more adequate idea of the *Hottentots*, too little known even to this time, there would be ſomething wanting to the light I have thrown on the ſubject, if I was to omit ſpeaking of a particular kind of people that may be ſtiled the *compoſite*, who have principally ſprung up in the preſent age, and have not yet, I believe, been mentioned by any traveller. This new generation will one day over-balance the old, and the epocha of its power will no doubt introduce extraordinary changes in the colony, and perhaps effect its ruin.

The multiplication of theſe individuals, which may be extremely rapid, might reaſonably alarm the Dutch politics, but they ſeem to be in a lethargy in this reſpect, and to take very little care of the conſequences which may probably ariſe from want of exertion. I mean to ſpeak of the natural children which have ſprung

from

from an intercourſe of the Whites with the female *Hottentots*, or between theſe ſame women and the negroes. They are commonly known at the Cape under the appellation of *Baſtards*, though this denomination is rather more applicable to the former ſort; for the latter are not ſo numerous, the *Hottentot* women not being willing to form connections with the negroes, becauſe, as they ſay, they ſuffer themſelves to be ſold like brutes; while, on the contrary, they look on themſelves as honoured by an intercourſe with the Europeans, and love to have the title of their miſtreſſes. The race produced by theſe laſt mentioned unions, gains ground and multiplies conſiderably. They are free like the *Hottentots*, and held in greater eſteem by them, notwithſtanding the diſdain with which they are treated at the Cape, where they do not even give themſelves the trouble to baptize them. Their character approaches nearer the European

than the *Hottentot*; they have more courage and energy than the latter, and are not ſo averſe to labour; but on the other hand, they are more paſſionate, enterpriſing, and miſchievous; and it is not uncommon to ſee them aſſaſſinate the maſters to whom they have ſold their ſervices; in this reſpect they are even worſe than the negroes, and are uſually the fabricators of thoſe villanies that are every day committed in one or other of the plantations.

The *Hottentot* is of a more peaceable diſpoſition, too phlegmatic to plan any atrocious enterprize, he has not even the reſolution to aſſiſt in their accompliſhment, and the worſt treatment would not be able to provoke him to any great degree of exertion; in one word, the coloniſt who has only *Hottentots* in his ſervice may ſleep in peace, certain they will rather

warn him of danger than attempt any thing to his diſadvantage.

The *Baſtard-White* is well made, robuſt, his ſkin is of a cleaner olive than the *Hottentot*, or rather of the colour of dried lemon peel; his hair is black, but longer, and leſs woolly; the children of theſe women by a white, as may be ſuppoſed, are ſtill fairer, but when by theſe gradations the ſkin and hair cannot be diſtinguiſhed from thoſe of a European, the prominence of the cheeks will continue remarkable; it is an indelible character by which they may be known even after the fourth generation.

The race produced by the *Hottentot* women and negroes is far ſuperior to the others; they are even taller and better formed; their colour bears a juſt proportion between the black of the father, and the olive of the mother, and is more agreeable to the eye than either.

They are, indeed, very different from the *Baſtard-White*, both in their phyſical and moral qualities; they are in general requeſt for labour; but what renders them ſtill more eſtimable, is, that to great activity without turbulence, they join the merit of a fidelity which may be depended on. Unhappily this kind is ſcarce, owing to the diſdain with which the *Hottentots* look on the negroes. It would long ſince have been of public utility, and a particular advantage to the coloniſts, had adminiſtration encouraged the propagation of this ſort of people; the expence would not have been burthenſome, and in the end would have been returned an hundred fold. We are not now in that age ſacred to ignorance, when every black was accounted a canibal; the Spaniards themſelves have given up the opinion that prevailed in the time of their barbarous Peruvian incurſions, when it was thought impoſſible that a ſoul of any value ſhould exiſt

exiſt but in a white body. Travellers, or rather the eſtabliſhment of a ſound and rational philoſophy, taught us that a rough outſide might cover a precious diamond.

Among the various nations that inhabit the weſtern coaſt of Africa, ſome are diſtinguiſhed from others by their ſocial qualities and laudable inclinations, beſides poſſeſſing a greater degree of aptitude and energy; theſe ſhould be encouraged to ſettle in the colonies where they ſhould have entire liberty; the coloniſts, to the utmoſt of their power, ſhould endeavour to promote a union between them and the female *Hottentots*; when once theſe women beheld them free, they would no longer deſpiſe them, and by this means a generation might be produced, who, adding the pacific diſpoſitions of their mothers, to the good qualities of the beſt Guinea blacks, would render uſeleſs, nay, incon-

venient, the unnatural bonds of ſlavery in all this part of Africa.

But theſe eaſy and natural means, which formerly would have required no difficulty in the execution, will probably never be attempted; perhaps it is now too late. On the other hand, if the project is yet practicable, it muſt be brought about by the Dutch Eaſt-India Company, whoſe endeavours, on this occaſion, might overcome many obſtacles. With the moſt ſcrupulous exactitude in its engagements, it unites a generoſity, which, for the ſake of their honour and proſperity, all other commercial aſſociations ſhould take pattern by; was it properly repreſented to this reſpectable body, they would, doubtleſs, take the neceſſary meaſures to execute a plan that would render their names immortal. But it is to be lamented, that a radical vice in the diſpoſition of the coloniſts oppoſes its accompliſhment, and it would

would be requiſite in the firſt place to remove thoſe ridiculous and anti-patriotic prejudices, which prevade the whole body of them.

They ſuffer, becauſe it appears difficult to ſtop the progreſs of the evil, that the coloniſts, ſo vain of their colour, but who, in general, have no mental qualifications to diſtinguiſh them from their ſlaves. They ſuffer, I ſay, that theſe uninformed country people, proud of a mediocrity of fortune, which they have not acquired by ſuperior abilities, ſhould look on, and treat with diſdain, men, who by their ſervices, either as ſoldiers or ſailors, have merited well of the company, and obtained permiſſion to ſettle at the Cape: to ſuch a height are their ideas of ſuperiority carried, that the moſt inconſiderable among them would think himſelf degraded by giving his daughter to one of theſe brave ſoldiers or expert ſeamen; and

a girl

a girl educated in theſe principles, would rather live in a ſtate of celibacy than become the wife of one of theſe defenders of her country. This claſs of people, therefore, rejected by the whites, are in a manner conſtrained to form connections with the female *Hottentots*, and this is the reaſon of that amazing increaſe of *Baſtard-Whites*, which bid fair to overflow the colonies; the turbulent and enterpriſing blood of the Europeans circulates in their veins, and there is a continual danger of troubles being fomented and projects formed, which the coloniſts (who are too much diſperſed about the country to unite ſuddenly in one body) would neither have time or power to prevent.

It is now computed that the number of *Baſtard-Whites* in the colonies, bears about the ſame proportion with reſpect to the *Hottentots*, as one to five; the epocha of this mixture, to fix it, at its moſt early

early period, cannot be prior to the eſtabliſhment of the Dutch at the Cape, that is to ſay, one hundred and thirty years: it may further be preſumed, that if intercourſes with the *Hottentots*, who were then in their ſavage ſtate, ſoon took place, they were neither ſo eaſily effected or ſo general as of late years: again, it is certain that the population of the colonies did not amount as now to twenty-four thouſand whites.

Theſe obſervations may give ſome idea of the progreſſive increaſe of both ſorts; the limits of the coloniſts are every day extending, conſequently the number of *Hottentots* in their juriſdiction is continually augmented; at the ſame time, deviating more and more from their original character, they baſtardize, and are confounded by a mixture with the whites and negroes; the degeneration is rapid, and

their

their natural good qualities will ſoon be corrupted.

The cold and phlegmatic conſtitution of the *Hottentot* men, forbids any rapid increaſe in their poſterity; but this ſame cauſe has a quite contrary effect with the other ſex, and the women, who would have only three or four children by a *Hottentot*, will have three times that number by a negro, and ſtill more with a white.

If the *Baſtard-White* is naturally of a bad diſpoſition; if he is vindictive, enterpriſing and perfidious; is it, alas! becauſe he is the offspring of a white by a female *Hottentot*, and that children partake more of the diſpoſition of the father than of the mother? This preſumption, humiliating as it may appear to us, cannot be controverted; for when it happens (which is very rare) that a white woman has children by a *Hottentot*, the mild and

peaceable diſpoſition of the father is always predominant in them.

Such, in general, are the obſervations I have made during my reſidence among theſe people; I ſhall now drop the ſubject, leſt I ſhould fatigue the attention of my readers by theſe dry unentertaining details, and ſhall only reſume it when occaſion preſents me with opportunities of touching lightly on theſe matters, in the courſe of the events and exigencies of my journey.

CHAP-

## CHAPTER IX.

### ACCOUNT OF THE HOTTENTOT LANGUAGE.

AS I purpoſed to paſs ſome time in Africa, my firſt care was to ſtudy the language of this people, and I ſucceeded in it even beyond my expectations.

This language (which it muſt be confeſſed is very imperfect) has no occaſion for terms to convey abſtract and metaphyſical ideas; it is not ſuſceptible of much ornament, and contains neither elegance nor exact ſyntax, yet its difficulties are not the leſs inextricable to him who does not bring both inclination and patience to the ſtudy; but I have

have been too well rewarded for my pains in this particular, by the pleaſure I found in converſing freely with the natives in the courſe of my journey, to repent the pains I took in adding this ſingular pronunciation and idiom to the various languages whoſe ſtudy had formed the major part of that laborious education I have received.

The *Hottentot* language does not reſemble (as ſome ancient authors have ſaid) "the cackling of young turkeys, the confuſed noiſe the old ones make when they "attack each other, the chattering of the "magpye, nor the hooting of the ſcreech-"owl;" it has ſtill leſs affinity to the cries of the bat, to which Pliny and Herodotus have compared it; indeed one need only reflect on this variety of aſſimilations, to be convinced that it is impoſſible any one language ſhould reſemble all theſe different ſounds at the ſame time.

Some

Some have advanced, with no greater degree of truth, that to hear a number of *Hottentots* converſing together, they would be taken for a parcel of ſtammerers. All theſe aſſertions, which ſo ſtrangely claſh and contradict each other, naturally lead one to ſuppoſe, that none of thoſe travellers who had deſcribed the *Hottentot* language ever gave themſelves the trouble to obtain any preciſe idea of it, and conſequently, without endeavouring to account for theſe miſtakes any otherwiſe, they have deceived their readers juſt as they happened to be deceived themſelves.

This language, notwithſtanding the ſingularity and difficulty of its pronunciation, is not ſo diſpleaſing as many have repreſented it, and may be attained by perſeverance.

I have known coloniſts who ſpoke it readily, and found that with a little application

plication I could ſoon make myſelf underſtood; though it is certainly very difficult for a European, and more ſo to a Frenchman than a Dutchman or German, becauſe the *u*, the *h*, and the *g* are pronounced much the ſame as in the Dutch and German languages, that is to ſay, the *u* by the *o u*, and the two other letters by thoſe expirations which the throat of a Frenchman does not ſeem formed to execute, and which they never perform with facility.

Of all the vocabularies publiſhed in different works, there is not one from which a ſingle word may be learned; in vain would any traveller endeavour to make himſelf underſtood, a *Hottentot* could never ſuſpect he was endeavouring to ſpeak to him in his own language.

One would ſuppoſe they had taken pains in all theſe vocabularies to omit a cha-

racter of the greateſt ſignification; they have not endeavoured to mark thoſe different cluckings of the tongue, which are indiſpenſable ſigns, that precede or ſeperate their words, and without which, they have no preciſe meaning.

Theſe cluckings are of three different kinds; the firſt I ſhall expreſs thus, (ʌ). This, which occurs more frequently than the others, is the ſofteſt and moſt attainable; it is formed by preſſing the tongue againſt the palate of the mouth and foreteeth, the mouth being ſhut, then opening it, and ſuddenly detaching the tongue at the ſame time, the cluck is produced. Indeed, it is no other than the ſmall noiſe which is ſo familiar to us, when being plagued with a troubleſome companion, we endeavour to expreſs our impatience without ſpeaking.

The ſecond (v) is louder than the firſt;

to

to produce this the tongue muſt be detached from the middle of the palate; it is the noiſe a coachman makes when he wiſhes to put his horſes in motion: but it ſhould be obſerved, that ſimply detaching the tongue is ſufficient; for when too much articulated, it is very difficult to join it with the firſt ſyllable of the word to which it belongs.

The third kind (Δ) requires greater force, and may be readily heard; this is the leaſt in uſe, and is exceeding difficult, requiring much time and attention before you can join it properly to the ſucceeding word.

It is produced by a ſingular contraction of the tongue, which muſt be drawn to the bottom of the palate near the throat; and it may be eaſily conceived that after this colliſion, it is difficult to bring it to the lips inſtantly, in order to articulate

the following word without any ſenſible interruption.

Theſe cluckings have different modulations, and are more difficult to be united to ſome letters or ſyllables than others; for, as I have already hinted, they muſt be ſounded at the ſame inſtant, or the meaning would be equivocal, as the force of the language may be ſaid to lay in theſe ſounds.

Theſe various combinations will appear almoſt impracticable, and ſound harſh to the ear of an European; in the beginning they appeared ſo to me, but I ſoon became habituated to them, and can affirm that, when learned, this language is not deſtitute of harmony, and in the mouth of a female *Hottentot* has its graces, as well as the German, when ſpoken by an amiable woman of Saxony.

I am

I am perſuaded that if any one ſhould endeavour to ſtudy this language from the vocabularies that have yet appeared, without any further inſtruction in the principles of it, he would ſoon be bewildered in a tedious chaos, where the fatigued imagination would find nothing but ridiculouſneſs and abſurdity. It is true, they make uſe of ſome words unaccompanied by a clucking, but theſe exceptions are very rare.

To prove how much the different ſounds produced in this manner by the tongue are neceſſary to aſcertain the ſignification of a number of ſynonimous words, I ſhall add a few examples which will help to elucidate the ſubject. *Áâp* ſignifies a *horſe*, in the *Hottentot* language, the ſame word means a *river*, and again, an *arrow*; it is the clucking alone that determines theſe variations. Naturally pronounced, without any colliſion, it ſignified a *horſe*, with

the ſecond cluck a *river*, and with the third an *arrow*. In the ſame manner, ʌ-*ou ip* means a *rock*, while Δ-*ou ip* is the name of the *buſtard*. Δ-*kaip* is the term given to one of their venomous ſerpents, but ʌ-*kaip* ſignifies the *paſon*, a kind of African gazel. Independent of theſe three indiſpenſable cluckings, there are ſome imperfect ſounds produced by the throat that cannot be deſcribed, and can only be acquired by a long courſe of practice; I ſhall mark them by a ſmall croſs, thus, + placed over the letter where they ſhould be introduced.

What I have ſaid is ſufficient to give an idea of the difficulty that would attend writing this language, in ſuch a manner as to be pronounced with the preciſion it requires. In the firſt place, it would be neceſſary to form a particular alphabet, and acquiring the cluckings would be the principle difficulty. But as the ſtudy of this

language will never enter into any plan of polite education, I ſhall not fatigue the reader with a tedious dictionary; but, for the ſake of thoſe who may be curious in this reſpect, add a ſmall liſt of words that concern natural hiſtory; and if any naturaliſt ſhould chance to viſit the ſame country, he may be pleaſed to have it in his power to aſk the *Hottentots* for thoſe animals he may wiſh to procure.

The following, are the names moſt of the African animals are known by among the *Hottentots* of the deſert; I have added thoſe which have been given them by the coloniſts.

It ſhould be obſerved that the *Hottentots* of the colonies having forgot part of their language, disfigure the remainder by a mixture of bad Dutch, in ſuch a manner, that many of the animals are called by other names, or known by ſeveral in the different cantons, which produces a con-

fuſion difficult to be deſcribed; this made me give the preference to a vocabulary, formed among thoſe people whoſe language is not ſubject to ſo many variations.

## VOCABULARY.

| *Engliſh Names.* | *Dutch Names.* | *Hottentot Names.* |
|---|---|---|
| The Elephant | Oliphant | Λ-Goap |
| The Rhinoceros | Renoſter | V-Nabap |
| The Hippopotamus | Zee-Koe | V-Kaous |
| The Giraff | Kameel-Paerd | Δ-Na-ïp |
| The Buffalo | Buffle | Λ-Ka-oop |
| The Iſland-Gazel | Eeland | Δ-Kaana |
| The Paſan | Gems-Bock | Λ-Kaip |
| The Condouma | Coudoe | V-Koudou or Gaïp |
| The Buballe | Harte-Beeſt | Δ-Kamap |
| The Zebra | Welde-Paerd | V-Kouarep |
| The Kwaga | Kwaga or Welde-Ezel | V-Nou V-Kouarep |
| The Hare | Haaze | Δ-Ou amp |
| The Marmoſet | Das | V-Ka oump |
| The Wild Boar | Welde-Varke | V-Kou-Goop |
| The Porcupine | Yzer-Varke | V-Nou ap |
| A Dog | Hond | Λ-Harip |
| Dogs | Honden | Λ-Harina |
| A Rat | Rott | Douroup |
| A Bat | Vleer-Muyſe | Λ-Nouga-Bouroup |
| A Lion | Leuw | Gamma |
| A Tyger | Tyger | Garou Gamma |
| A Tyger Cat | Tyger-Kat | Λ-Ou amp |
| The Hyæna | Wolf | Λ-Hirop |
| The Wild Dog | Welde-Hond | Δ-Goup |
| The Jackal | Jakals | Δ-Direp |
| The Horſe | Paerd | Aâp |

The

| *Engliſh Names.* | *Dutch Names.* | *Hottentot Names.* |
|---|---|---|
| The Bull | Beull | Karamap |
| A Cow | Koe | Goumas |
| An Ox | Oſs | Goumap |
| A Sheep | Shaap | Goou |
| Sheep | Shaapen | Gaouna |
| A He-Goat | Bock | Bri-ï |
| A She-Goat | Gytt | Tararé bris |
| A Bird | Voogel | Δ-Kanip |
| A Buſtard | Trap-Gans | Λ-Ou ip |
| The Pheaſant | Feſant | Koa Koa or V-Kabos |
| The Martin | Welde-Swaluw | Λ-O-atſi Λ-nambro |
| The Partridge | Patrys | Λ-Ouri-Kinas |
| The Quail | Kwartel | Δ-Kabip |
| The Sparrow | Moſs | V-Kabari |
| The Vulture | Aas-Voogel | Λ-Gha ip |
| A Wild Gooſe | Welde-Gans | Gaamp |
| The Mountain Drake | Berg-Eend | Δ-Karo hei gaamp |
| The Flamingo | Flamingo | Δ-Gaorip |
| A Turtle Dove | Tortel-Duyf | Λ-Neis |
| A Mountain | Berg | Δ-Ourmi |
| A Rock | Klep | Λ-Ou ip or Λ-Karip |
| A River | Rivier | V-Aap |
| A Fountain | Fontyn | Λ-Aaup |
| The Sea | Zee | Hourip |
| A Tree | Boom | Haip |
| A Waggon | Waage | Kouri-ip |
| A Flower | Blom | Δ-Narina |
| Milk | Melck | Deip |
| Water | Waater | V-Kama |
| Meat | Vleeſch | V-Gaaus |
| Fiſh | Vis | Δ-Ko oup |
| A Spider | Spen | Λ-Hous |
| A Camelion | | V-Karou-Koup |
| A Butterfly | Kapelle | Tabou Tabou |
| Three different Species of Gazels | Ree Bock | Gnioop |
| | Duyker | Λ-Aoump |
| | Steen Bock | Λ-Harip |

A Fly

| *Engliſh Names.* | *Dutch Names.* | *Hottentot Names.* |
|---|---|---|
| A Fly | Vlig | Λ-Dinaap |
| A Serpent | Slang | Λ-Kanou-Goup |
| A Tortoiſe | Schil-Pad | Λ-Ouna |
| A Toad | Pade | V-Oorokoop |
| The Legouan | L'Egouane | V-Naſeep |
| A Muſket | Snaphan | Δ-Kabooup |
| An Arrow | Peyl | Δ-Aap |
| A Bow | Boog | Kgaap |
| An Aſſagaye | Sagaye | Λ-Aure-Koop |
| An European | Europées | V-Orée-Goep |
| A Negro | Swarte-Jong | Kabop |
| A Hottentot Man | Hottentot | Khoe-Khoëp |
| A Hottentot Woman | Hottentoten | Tarare-Khoes |

After what I have ſaid of the manners and ſimplicity of this nation, it might eaſily be conjectured their language is a barren one; before the arrival of the Europeans it was ſtill more ſo, but they having introduced new objects, new names became neceſſary; this accounts for the *Hottentots* of the colonies having expreſſions which are neither employed nor underſtood by the *Hottentot* ſavages, to whom many of theſe objects are unknown.

Thus much is certain, there is uſually a great

a great analogy between the name and the thing ſignified; for example, they call a muſket Δ-*kabooup*, the cluck, and pronouncing the firſt ſyllable. Δ-*ka*, imitates the ſnapping of the lock on pulling the trigger, while the concluſion of the word *booup*, approaches as near as poſſible to the exploſion of the piece; and as theſe people uſe a vaſt deal of geſticulation in ſpeaking, repreſenting (if I may ſo expreſs myſelf) in pantomime what they expreſs, it is ſufficient to have but a very ſuperficial knowledge of their idiom to comprehend every thing that is important.

CHAP-

## CHAPTER X.

THE AUTHOR VISITED BY A TROOP OF CAFFREES—ACCOUNT OF THE EXPEDITION OF HIS DEPUTIES.

THREE weeks were now elapſed ſince the departure of my deputies. I had for ſome time paſt been reflecting on the cauſes that could occaſion ſo long an abſence, but I kept my ſuſpicions and inquietudes to myſelf, not wiſhing to communicate them to thoſe who ſurrounded me, as it would be only furniſhing them with arms to combat my deſigns.

The

The reſolution I had formed of penetrating into *Caffraria*, was by no means acceptable to my *Hottentots*. I ſometimes ſurpriſed them conſulting together on the ſubject, and murmuring more or leſs againſt me; not but I was convinced a ſincere attachment to my perſon, and dread of the dangers I ſhould be expoſed to, were among the objections they had to the journey.

The concluſion of their conſultations ſeemed to be, that I diſcovered too much temerity in running thus on the moſt imminent dangers; that, apparently, I was regardleſs of my own life, and obſtinately bent on leading them to be ſlaughtered by their enemies; and I had reaſon to believe they were unanimouſly reſolved to abandon me if I perſiſted in my deſign.

The queſtion now ſeemed to be, how they ſhould put this plan in execution; for

for of the five and twenty who were diſſatisfied, I found ſcarce two were of a mind. Thoſe I had hired in the courſe of my journey need make no ceremony of leaving me, but I had engaged ſome at Mr. Mulders, in the country of *Auteniquas*, and others I had brought from the Cape, under the recommendation of the *Fiſcal*; theſe laſt, in particular, were much embarraſſed, not knowing whether they might venture to return to town, after having forſaken me. Meantime I was almoſt univerſally accuſed with having ſacrificed my deputies.

I muſt confeſs their ſtay began to be very extraordinary: *Hans* had aſſured me it only required three, or four days at moſt, to reach the *Caffree* king, *Pharoo*; then, giving him as many days to ſtop there, and allowing an equal number for his return, he had already doubled the time that, by this calculation, appeared neceſ-

neceſſary for the journey: the natural concluſion was, ſome ſiniſter accident had detained them, and the moſt probable one ſeemed to be, that the ſuſpicions of the *Caffrees* had been fatal to my unfortunate meſſengers.

Floating on a ſea of uncertainties, not having yet relinquiſhed all hope of ſeeing them return, I was at a loſs what orders to give my people, or how to put an end to their debates and inquietudes.

My faithful *Klaas* was of opinion, that I ſhould not come to any concluſion, but expect for ſome time longer the return of *Hans* and his party; letting thoſe depart, who expreſſed the greateſt degree of obſtinacy and ill humour.

All this time I affected an air of tranquillity, and continued my cuſtomary hunting; but a kind of involuntary inclination

clination uſually drew me in that direction from my camp, from whence I ſo ardently deſired to ſee the return of my people. During the day I contrived to keep hope alive, but at night my horrors returned with double force, and in the morning I renewed my fruitleſs melancholy ſearch.

At length, *Klaas* (who was almoſt as unhappy as his maſter) ſhut himſelf up with me in the tent; and, to complete the dejection which already preyed upon my ſpirits, aſſured me he had given up every expectation of ever ſeeing *Hans* or his comrades again. He ſuppoſed the muſkets with which they were provided, had tempted the *Caffrees*; who, being now actually at war, were in great want of iron, and that they were infallibly aſſaſſinated. He adviſed me to remain here no longer, as it would be impoſſible after this misfortune to advance into *Caffraria*.

I felt

I felt the whole force of this reaſoning, which I knew to be dictated by the moſt lively intereſt for the ſafety of my perſon, and ſhould, perhaps, have been perſuaded to quit *Koks-Kraal*, the only rendezvous where my generous deputies could hope to rejoin their maſter, when one of the four *Hottentots* who were ſet to watch our cattle, entered the tent out of breath, with all the ſigns of fear and trepidation on his countenance. He informed me that they had juſt diſcovered a numerous troop of *Caffrees* on the oppoſite ſide of the river, that they advanced towards my camp, and were now about to croſs the ſtream.

This news univerſally alarmed my people. As the hope of ſeeing the meſſengers return was not entirely extinguiſhed, my firſt impulſe was to run to meet them; but the conſideration of the great number I was aſſured were approaching, preſently

deſtroyed that idea, and diſſipated every flattering illuſion.

I immediately diſpatched four of my people, under the command of *Klaas*, to help to collect my cattle, and drive them inſtantly to the camp. After having performed this ſervice, I wiſhed him to reconnoitre the party, if poſſible, without being perceived, to be ſatisfied whether they were in ſuch numbers as had been repreſented, and endeavour to judge by their proceedings what deſigns had brought them here. I expreſsly deſired *Klaas*, if he diſcovered my deputies among them, to cauſe his party to fire their muſkets; but if not, to keep themſelves concealed and endeavour to ſend one of the four to inform me of the motions of the enemy.

Juſt as they were departing the cattle arrived at my camp, conducted by the remaining three, who had the care of them,

them, and who were equally alarmed with their comrade.

I inſtantly ſet about examining and charging our arms: it was not my intention to commence hoſtilities, but I determined to remain firm in my camp, to put every thing in the beſt poſture of defence, and (if attacked) to make a vigorous reſiſtance.

I confeſs I was greatly agitated; not that I doubted the ſucceſs of the combat; the ſuperiority of our arms inſpired me with confidence in this particular: but I was unhappy at the thought of coming to theſe extremities without any previous explanation. I ſaw the hopes of my future journey, all thoſe pacific meaſures I had reſolved to maintain, and under the ſanction of which I flattered myſelf I ſhould be able to explore every part of *Caffraria*, on the eve of being irrevocably deſtroyed, and myſelf ranged, in the opinion of this

people, among the coloniſts, who take pleaſure in loading them with unmerited injuries, in revenge of which, they would now endeavour to exterminate my whole caravan.

I was rouſed from theſe diſagreeable reflections by hearing the report of ſeveral muſkets, which, after the orders I had given *Klaas*, conſiderably raiſed the ſpirits of myſelf and people, as it aſſured us *Hans* and his companions were yet alive, and of the party. Still I had enough to do to calm their apprehenſions, eſpecially as thoſe who had been with the cattle affirmed, they had not diſcovered a ſingle *Hottentot* among the troop of *Caffrees*: paſſing, therefore, immediately from hope to fear, they ſuppoſed the diſcharge we had heard was occaſioned by *Klaas* and the reſt being ſuddenly ſurpriſed by them; and concluded that at this moment they were contending, or perhaps, murdered by the enemy.

At

At the very inſtant that my imagination began to be infected with this idea, how great was my ſatisfaction to ſee *Klaas* himſelf make his appearance from behind a little rock at about three hundred paces diſtance! The compoſure of his countenance, which, by the aid of my teleſcope, I could perfectly diſtinguiſh, convinced me he had no ill news to announce; and I was confirmed in this opinion, when, a few minutes after, I ſaw the whole troop file off by the ſame road, and advance peaceably, and in good order towards the camp.

My *Hottentots* walking among the *Caffrees*, with the greateſt appearance of cordiality, aſſured me I had nothing to fear. I now ordered my people to lay down their arms, and endeavour to appear calm and compoſed.

How impatient was I to queſtion my deputies, and to learn what I might undertake

dertake reſpecting my future journey, without danger to them or myſelf! Yet, I reſolved not to advance, or quit my little arſenal.

When the company had approached within reach of the *aſſaygay*, *Hans* ordered them to halt, and advancing alone to where I ſtood, informed me, in few words, that I was at liberty to travel into *Caffraria*, without running the ſmalleſt danger, being on his repreſentation, reſpected there as a friend; the nation he had juſt quitted, having conjured me not to defer my intentions, and declared they ſhould ſee my approach with joy. He added, I might judge of the favourable opinion they entertained of my deſigns, by the confidence they had themſelves teſtified in taking the liberty to viſit me, in order to make an offer of their friendſhip, and demand mine: in a word, they had undertaken this journey on the aſſurances

rances he gave them of a favourable recep-
tion at my camp.

In regard to the length of time they had been abſent, *Hans* informed me, that, on his arrival among the *Caffrees*, he had not been able to meet with king *Pharoo*, who was removed thirty leagues from his uſual reſidence. That, after remaining there ſome time in hopes of his return, ſhagreened at not being able to execute my commiſſion to his ſatisfaction, he had ſet off in queſt of him, but had the mortification to learn, from a *Hoord* he met with on the way, that the chief was again removed, and that they were utterly ignorant of the rout he had taken, or how long he would be abſent. Some thought he was gone towards the colonies; others that he was with the *Tambouchis*, a nation on the borders of *Caffraria*, which they hoped could ſupply them with arms and iron; he added, that finding it impoſſible

to obey my orders, and not knowing what further to do, he thought it beſt to return; that owing to the advantageous ideas he had given the *Caffrees* of my character and peaceable diſpoſition, they had offered to accompany him, and form in their turn a a deputation to me, to aſſure me of the general good will of the country, and that being convinced I was no coloniſt, they were ready to receive me as a friend and protector.

Theſe *Caffrees* flattered themſelves I ſhould be able to revenge them on a certain coloniſt of *Bruyntjes-Hoogte*, of whom they had dreadful complaints to make, and whoſe very name inſpired horror. In the ſequel I learned a number of incidents reſpecting the conduct of this wretch, whoſe odious name ſome particular conſiderations prevent my publiſhing, but the crimes which have acquired him diſtinction even in the claſs of monſters, are of ſuch

ſuch public notoriety, that every inhabitant of the Cape is acquainted with them. In vain has government ſummoned him to its tribunal, to render an account of his conduct; ſituated on the limits of the colonies, where the laws have not ſufficient power, the orders of the governor, or threats of his officers, are but, for him, the ſignals to new offences.

CHAP.

## CHAPTER XI.

INSTANCE OF ADDRESS IN A YOUNG CAFFREE —THE AUTHOR INTREATED TO ENTER CAFFRARIA—THE MANNER IN WHICH THE CAFFREES FORGE THEIR ASSAYGAYS —RECEIVE SOME USEFUL HINTS FROM THE AUTHOR.

WITHOUT waiting for any farther diſcourſe, I gave *Hans* orders to bid the *Caffrees* advance; he immediately made a ſign with his hand, and in a moment, I was ſurrounded by the whole company, which (without counting my deputies) amounted to nineteen men, five women, and two young children.

They

They ſaluted me by the *Tabe*, which was as familiar to me as to themſelves, and was the only anſwer I made to their compliments. I found I could not underſtand the *Caffree* language, and that they did not employ in pronouncing it thoſe cluckings moſt frequent with the *Hottentots*; in every other reſpect their ſalutations were the ſame as among the *Gonaquais*, but they addreſſed me all at once, with a precipitation and volubility, that appeared the ſtranger, as for more than a year I had been accuſtomed to the deliberation of my inactive *Hottentots*; this tranſition was ſo ſudden, that I was confounded with the immediate buzzing that attacked my ears, and preſently out of patience at not being able to make out any diſtant ſound.

I obſerved they were very buſy in making remarks on the different objects that my camp preſented to their view. They examined

examined every article; and each, in his turn, expreſſed ſurprize and ſatisfaction.

I have ſomewhere read, that aſtoniſhment is a certain indication of ignorance; however that may be, ignorance is no certain mark of incapacity: this laſt obſervation, at leaſt, holds good with the *Caffrees*, who cannot without injuſtice be accuſed of inaptitude, there being a prodigious difference between them and the *Hottentots* in reſpect to addreſs and induſtry.

*Hans* had enlarged on the merits of my double barrelled guns and piſtols; and, on the ſtrength of his recitals, they were already diſpoſed to look on my weapons as little ſhort of miraculous. One of the *Caffrees*, in the name of the reſt, ſoon begged permiſſion to ſee them. I ordered ſome to be produced, and put them myſelf into their hands, without any appearance of

of diſtruſt; on which, they were handed from one to the other and examined with the moſt minute attention: but their curioſity demanded ſomething more than a bare examination; this I was aware of, and chance furniſhed me with an excellent opportunity of gratifying their wiſhes.

Two ſwallows were at this time paſſing and repaſſing before us; the two charges from the piece I had in my hand brought them down; this very much aſtoniſhed the *Caffrees*; they did not know which to admire moſt, me or my weapon.

It is certain I was very fortunate in this demonſtration of my ſkill, which might very poſſibly have failed; but my ſucceſs gave them the higheſt opinion of my abilities; which, in the ſequel, I never failed to take advantage of.

I demanded, if they could do as much with

with their *aſſaygays?* but, ſmiling, they ſhook their heads, and confeſſed that weapon was inſufficient to arreſt a bird in its flight. One among them advanced, and pointing to the ſheep that were at about a hundred paces diſtance, gave me to underſtand, that one of his comrades could ſtrike, while running, either thoſe or any other quadrupeds. *Hans* now preſented the young *Caffree* alluded to; he was perfectly well made, and his countenance immediately intereſted me in his behalf. I could not help admiring the appearance of this youth, who they aſſured me he was accounted among his countrymen to be one of the moſt expert at throwing the *aſſaygay* and ſhort *maſſue*, (which weapon they make uſe of in the ſame manner), and that his addreſs in this reſpect, had acquired him great reputation.

I had heard ſo much of *Caffraria*, and

the

the redoubtable weapons uſed there, that I wiſhed to be myſelf a witneſs of what could be effected with them by a youth of about eighteen; who, with a good grace, prepared himſelf for the trial.

As I propoſed treating this company, one of my *Hottentots* had already ſeparated a ſheep from the flock, which I thought would anſwer the purpoſe; I therefore bad him try his ſkill on that. He took five *aſſaygays* in his left hand, and one in his right; on a ſignal given, my man let go the ſheep, which ran to rejoin the flock; he brandiſhed his weapon, and running four or five ſteps, threw it with amazing force: the ſhaft whiſtled through the air—the head was preſently buried in the ſide of the animal, who fell and died on the ſpot.

I could not conceal my pleaſure and ſurprize, ſo much ſkill, united with ſtrength and

and grace, enchanted all my people. Self-love is a univerſal paſſion, though modified according to the taſte and manners of different climes and people: in Europe, it ſparkles in the eyes of a handſome woman, and renders her diſdainful; it is the ſoul of genius, the ſtimulator to every ſurpriſing effort of art; it exults in the pomp of luxury; it hides itſelf under filth and tatters. In Africa, the ſavage has not the art to diſguiſe his ſentiments; the teſtimonies of admiration this young *Caffree* had drawn from us, gave an additional animation to his countenance: proud of his triumph, he ſcarcely appeared to touch the earth, he ranged himſelf by my ſide with a look of exultation, and ſeemed to ſay, "*where is the difference?*"

His countrymen were not leſs charmed with his ſucceſs; they fixed their eyes upon me, and endeavoured to ſearch my thoughts,

*Female Hottentot.*

thoughts, for the effect this eſſay of his addreſs had produced on my mind.

I had many opportunities after this, of remarking that there only wanted an experienced chief at the head of theſe people, to overthrow the whole *Hottentot* nation, and all the coloniſts; but at preſent, the great ſuperiority of our arms renders all their courage and addreſs ineffectual.

After having drawn his lance from the body of the animal, the young *Caffree* plunged the head of it ſeveral times into the ſand, and wiped it carefully with a handful of graſs.

I was very ſorry I could not converſe freely with theſe new comers; the tediouſneſs of interpretation, perhaps, the limited conception of the interpreter, gave me a vexation I could hardly moderate; they on their part, more animated, having

nothing of the heavy taciturnity of the *Hottentots*, were equally eager to communicate their thoughts, or rather to learn ſomething of me.

Ever ſince the arrival of theſe people, I had been fully employed in anſwering the queſtions curioſity had prompted them to aſk; meantime, I wiſhed to queſtion them, and flattered myſelf this torrent of words and geſtures would ſhortly be exhauſted; hoping, when the firſt moment of effervescence had ſubſided, I ſhould have my turn at interrogation.

More prudent than the *Hottentots*, leaving their ſubſiſtence leſs to hazard, they had not embarked on this expedition without a quantity of biſket, ſeveral oxen deſtined to ſupply them with meat; and four others to carry neceſſaries. They had not forgot to bring ſome of thoſe baſkets I had ſo much admired among the *Gonaquais*, which

which they hoped to exchange for ſomething that would turn to their advantage. They had likewiſe ſome cows and calves; ſo that upon the whole, this caravan had an appearance of eaſe and abundance, which we ſhould vainly expect to encounter in the diſmal vallies of *Savoy*.

I marked out, at ſome diſtance from my camp, the preciſe place where I wiſhed them to erect their huts, and was more fortunate, and better obeyed than *Idomeneus*, when he meant to build the city of *Salentum*; for, in the ſpace of a quarter of an hour, I ſaw them buſily eſtabliſhing their little colony. The fires were kindled; the ſheep the young *Caffree* had killed was cut into pieces; it was roaſted, and preſently nothing remained of it but the bones.

I was not to learn what a powerful agent intereſt is, and how readily ſhe diſpoſes

mankind to accommodate themſelves to each others neceſſities, having frequently found myſelf in circumſtances where the application of this remark had proved of the greateſt utility; I wiſhed to attach myſelf to the *Caffrees*, as I did to the firſt ſavages I had encountered, particularly the *Gonaquais*: I diſtributed therefore, among my viſitors, a part of my trinkets and tobacco. They received my preſents with ſatisfaction, and on the ſpot, every one began to make uſe of them according to his fancy; but what moſt ſtruck their attention, and which, I believe, they would have been very glad to have robbed me of, was the iron. They gazed ardently on it, extolled its value, and ſeemed to prize it above all things; the hatchets, pick-axes, augers that were in my waggons, they beheld with aſtoniſhment, and ſeemed to covet with a degree of impatience.

In

In order to diminiſh the ardour of theſe deſires, (ſince it was now impoſſible to prevent them from knowing I was in poſſeſſion of theſe articles), I gave orders to have them carefully concealed.

After what I knew of the embarraſſment theſe ſavages are under on account of materials for their weapons, it was extremely dangerous to ſtimulate theſe deſires too far, ſince they might ſuggeſt intentions inimical to my repoſe; or, at leaſt, excite them to obtain that by art, which they deſpaired of accompliſhing by force.

Such is the general diſpoſition of mankind in a ſtate of incultivation; indeed, nature herſelf ſeems to inculcate the leſſon, and declare it unreaſonable that any one ſhould monopolize for his own particular purpoſes, what is the general birth-right of all; and any glaring inſtance of inequality, may bring on the moſt alarming conſequences.

Whoever has read Captain Cook's Voyages to the South Seas, muſt have remarked, that this celebrated navigator or his party, ſcarce ever ſet foot on ſhore without meeting with ſome loſs. The iſlanders came and plundered them, even in their ſhips; they ſtole the hunters arms, and the ſailors habits, Mr. Forſter, the naturaliſt, relates of doctor Sparman, that after having robbed him of his ſword, they helped themſelves to more than two thirds of his apparel.

The *Caffrees* and *Hottentots* are not yet arrived at their degree of dexterity, but they are not entirely exempt from blame, and thoſe who would live at peace with them, muſt ſometimes, wink at this foible.

Some trifling inſtances of how difficult it is for a *Caffree* to reſiſt the temptation of pilfering iron, ſoon preſented themſelves; but I reproached my own folly, with

with being in ſome meaſure the cauſe of this, as I ſhould certainly have taken more timely precautions. Meantime, I took care to have them narrowly watched.

Myſelf and *Klaas* obſerved (not without inquietude) by their manner of diſcourſing among themſelves, and the eagerneſs with which they meaſured the length and thickneſs of the plates of iron my waggon wheels were ſhod with, how happy the poſſeſſion of that treaſure would make them. The obſerving and jealous eyes of my *Hottentots* were never off the *Caffrees*, and as if my own remarks were not ſufficient, they were ever adding their ſuſpicions, and endeavouring to alarm my fears with reſpect to my gueſts.

I obſerved with regret, that a ſpirit of hatred and diſcord was every moment fermenting and gaining ground among my people, and juſtly reproached myſelf with

having been, in a great meaſure the cauſe of it, by prematurely diſcovering my future plan of operations, in which they conceived there was too great a degree of temerity. I regretted the few hours I had ſtopped at *Bruyntjes-Hoogte*, to ſolicit the ſuccour of the coloniſts, who, by their diſcourſes concerning the *Caffrees*, had frighted my people, and diſturbed the good intelligence which till then had ſubſiſted among us. So true it is, that in every expedition ſecrecy is abſolutely neceſſary.

For my own part, I apprehended no danger that could reaſonably alarm me; we were ſo ſuperior to our viſitors, eſpecially in point of arms, that had they harboured any ill deſigns they could have but little proſpect of ſucceſs; but I was not the leſs particular in my precautions, and took care not to relax in the ſeverity of my diſcipline, as well to keep my people firm to their duty, as to prevent the *Caf-*

*frees*

*frees* from entertaining any idea of attacking us with ſucceſs, in caſe they ſhould be ſo diſpoſed. Except the two huntſmen, who went out every day in ſearch of game, and the four men who guarded my cattle in the paſtures, none of my *Hottentots* were ever out of ſight of the camp.

I paſſed whole days among the *Caffrees*, converſing with them by means of an interpreter, and having a number of particulars explained reſpecting that nation, which is leſs known to Europeans than even the *Hottentots*. The embarraſſment and difficulty of this mode of diſcourſe took up, it is true, much time; the improvement of each day was very trivial, and the ſum total not very voluminous. I employed a whole week in this manner, diſcovering nothing but good-will and candour in my viſitors. Fully convinced they were ingenuous in their expreſſions of attachment, I was the leſs on my guard with

with reſpect to them, and admoniſhed my people to appear leſs ſuſpicious.

I ſoon became more habituated to their language, began to underſtand them, and to make myſelf underſtood, conſequently our diſcourſes became more intereſting on both ſides.

They were inceſſantly conjuring me to accompany them into *Caffraria*. Twenty times had they repeated every motive they conceived moſt likely to induce me to it. I was ſufficiently inclined to cloſe with theſe repeated invitations, but I had ſome very powerful reaſons that forbad my giving way to this deſire, which the reader will ſhortly find explained. I excuſed myſelf by aſſuring them it would be impoſſible to begin my journey ſo ſoon as they wiſhed; and added, (examining them meantime with great attention), that I had been informed their country was ſo beſet

beſet with woods and mountains, that it would be abſolutely impoſſible to take my waggons with me. I obſerved with pleaſure, that this declaration did not ſeem to effect them, and by the ſatisfaction they continued to expreſs on my renewed aſſurances of viſiting them with the earlieſt opportunity, I was ſatisfied their affections were not ſo unalterably fixed, as I had apprehended, on my augers, hatchets, or the ſhoding of my waggon wheels: but I obſerved, that in proportion as I aſſured them of my friendſhip, vengeance ſeemed to ſparkle in their eyes, while every look and geſture plainly evinced how much they ſhould think themſelves ſtrengthened by my alliance; then, turning about, they confered eagerly among themſelves, demonſtrating, by their manner, the high opinion they entertained both of my power, and inclination to ſerve them.

The name of the above-mentioned cruel inha-

inhabitant of *Bruyntjes-Hoogte*, was inceſſantly in their mouths; one of the *Caffrees*, in particular, in an agony of rage and deſpair, violently ſtruck his head, while relating the tragical ſtory of his wife big with child and two of their offſpring being murthered by the hand of this relentleſs coloniſt, whoſe unnatural thirſt of blood carried to the wanton commiſſion of the moſt abominable crimes.

The following anecdote however extraordinary it may appear, was related to me by one of theſe *Caffrees*; and I have twenty times ſince had the truth of it confirmed by different people.

At a time when peace was eſtabliſhed between the *Caffrees* and coloniſts, while they lived together in tolerable good intelligence, having no apparent reaſon either to fear or perſecute each other; this tyger of *Bruyntges-Hoogte*, who found his

his ſchemes diſconcerted by this good fellowſhip, being only happy in the boſom of horror and carnage, in hope of renewing the flame of war, contrived to purchaſe at Cape Town, ſome old unſerviceable muſket barrels, which he knew he could readily exchange with the unſuſpecting *Caffrees*, who are always in want of that metal. The bargain being made before he delivered them, he nailed up the touch-holes, and having loaded them with a double charge of powder each, rammed in bits of broken braſs, old iron, &c. up to the mouth. The unhappy ſavages, who underſtand only the dreadful effects of fire-arms, and nothing of their mechaniſm, took home their purchaſe, and immediately ſat about converting them into *aſſaygays*: the fire is kindled, and the fatal inſtruments of deſtruction diſpoſed on it; preſently the powder takes fire, and produces a dreadful detonation, which ſcatters in an inſtant the barrels, their contents,

tents, and the flaming brands that ſurrounded them, burning and wounding in every direction. One among them, who related this event, which the whole *Hoord* had been witneſs of, made me remark the ſcars of ſeveral wounds he had received on this tragical occaſion.

An inſtance of this nature is ſufficient to juſtify the *Caffrees* for that implacable reſentment that rankles in their wounded minds, and urges them inceſſantly to vengeance. Why ſhould we ſuppoſe this the effect of a natural atrocity, when, in fact, it proceeds from a ſpirit of repriſal?

Nature has no more played the ſtep-mother with the *Caffree*, than with any other ſavage; injuſtice and tyranny are univerſally odious to them.

The moſt thoughtleſs and tranquil ſet of beings we know, the *Carribees* on the coaſt

coaſt of South America, would be converted into furious lions, ſhould any one have the temerity to endeavour to diſpoſſeſs them of the miſerable retreat with which they are content.

If rendered deſperate by perſecution, continually harraſſed and deſpoiled, deſpair has conducted the *Caffrees* to cruelty; if their plans of revenge have ſometimes proved ſucceſsful, if they have ſpoiled the produce of the field, burned the habitations, and murdered the proprietors, the whites have been to blame in ſetting them examples of theſe ſhocking exceſſes.

The hatred of this people is unhappily extended to the *Hottentots*, whom the perfidious politics of the coloniſts have not failed to prevent and employ in their machinations; thinking by this means to diminiſh the dangers to which they are ſometimes expoſed; but theſe precautions fre-

frequently prove abortive when oppoſed to the active and enterpriſing diſpoſition of the *Caffrees*.

The *Hottentot* is too timerous and ill armed to face danger boldly, he therefore chiefly depends on his cunning; and charged with the office of a ſpy, reconnoitres the poſts of the enemy, endeavouring particularly to diſcover where his effects are concealed; the piercing eye of the *Caffree* frequently diſcovers theſe manœuvres, he darts on his prey with the rapidity of lightning, and ſacrifices him in an inſtant.

Having taken ſome pains to ſtudy the diſpoſition of theſe people, (who have been ſo much calumniated), I began to entertain as favorable an opinion of them as of the *Hottentots*; my days paſſed as uſual, continually varying my amuſements and

and occupations, without being tormented with ſuſpicions on account of my gueſts.

I now recommenced my hunting, ſome of my viſitors uſually attended me; but I was beſt pleaſed when accompanied by the young *Caffree*, who frequently gave additional proofs of his addreſs, ſtriking the game with his unerring *aſſaygay*.

In one of our excurſions he helped me to kill a very large male *hippopotamus*; this was the only one we met with, the frequent reports of our fire-arms having probably frighted away the reſt. This did not prove ſuch good eating as the female we had killed; my people aſſured me it was an old one, though (according to their account) the females are ever the moſt delicate food. Its fat has a rancidity which is very diſagreeable, except to a *Hottentot*.

The *Caffrees* did not ſet much ſtore by it, prefering their own beef; this, indeed, is

the favourite food of theſe people, to which they think mutton—by no means comparable, conſequently they never give themſelves the trouble to breed ſheep.

I had not yet remarked the horned cattle they had brought with them, for at day-break they are driven to paſture, and do not return till the evening; but one morning, happening to be very early at the *Kraal*, I was ſtruck with the appearance of theſe animals, and could hardly ſuppoſe them to be cows and oxen; not becauſe they were ſo much leſs than ours, but from the number and formations of the horns. Perſuaded theſe were natural concretions, I looked on the cattle of the *Caffrees* as a different ſpecies from any I had ever ſeen; but I was quickly diſabuſed by my gueſts, who aſſured me the peculiarity I was ſo much ſurpriſed at was an effect of art, and varied according to the fancy of the operator. That by means of a proceſs, familiar

liar to them, they would not only multiply the horns, but give them almoſt any form they pleaſed, and they offered to give me occular demonſtration of the poſſibility of what they aſſerted. I was too curious to learn a method which ſeemed to produce ſuch unaccountable effects, to make any difficulty of becoming their pupil.

I found they begin the operation when the animal is young; juſt as the horn begins to appear they make a vertical inciſion in it, on which the parts naturally divide from each other, and grow up in two or more diſtinct horns, as the perſon by cutting it happens to determine. If afterwards they wiſh to make one of theſe diviſions, or the whole horn (ſuppoſing it has not been ſeparated) form a circle, they pare off a ſmall part from the ſide without injuring the point; this operation frequently repeated, occaſions it to bend in a contrary direction, and in time will bring

the point to the root. Convinced by experience that this method will always determine the bend of the horn, it may eaſily be conceived they may form an infinity of variations, according to the caprice of the operator.

One day, while I was examining the different utenſils belonging to the *Caffrees*, and aſking them a number of queſtions reſpecting their country, I took notice of a particular kind of noiſe which ſtruck my ear at intervals, and ſeemed at no great diſtance. I enquired whence it proceeded, and was informed two or three of their countrymen were buſy at the foot of a little rock, forging ſeveral pieces of old iron they had brought from home with them. Wiſhing to know whether they had robbed me of ſome of my tools, and curious to ſee them perform ſo difficult an operation as forging iron muſt be to people who ſeemed to have no conveniencies

for

for that purpoſe, I engaged two among them to conduct me to the ſpot.

This unexpected viſit, that furniſhed me with an opportunity of giving theſe people ſome inſight into the firſt mechaniſm of a forge, of which they ſeemed to entertain but a very imperfect idea, was ſo remarkable, that I think it may not be improper to relate the circumſtances of it.

The *Caffrees* make and forge their own *aſſaygays*, but know nothing of iron beyond its malleability; the melting, or ſeperating it from the oar. It is what has been already wrought, ſuch as muſket-barrels, hoops, or indeed, any kind of old iron, that they are fond of.

The *aſſaygays* are of two kinds; ſome have a plain iron head, rounded, and ſimply ſharpened to a point; others are more artfully, I might ſay, more cruelly

formed, being ſquare, and the four angles cut into notches or teeth, two rows verging downwards, and two in a contrary direction, ſo that they neceſſarily tear the fleſh, either on entering or being drawn from the wound.

One cannot help admiring the patience of theſe ſavages, when it is conſidered that on a block of *granite*, or ſometimes on the rock itſelf, which anſwers the purpoſe of an anvil, with a piece of the ſame ſubſtance for a hammer, they will produce inſtruments ſo neatly formed that the beſt armourer might not be aſhamed of, and I think I might defy any one of them, with all his addreſs and genius, to produce, with ſuch tools, weapons that could compare in neatneſs with thoſe formed by the *Caffrees*.

Thoſe I am now ſpeaking of were buſy round a large fire, at the foot of a rock of *granite*;

*granite*; they took from it a piece of iron, tolerably red, laid it on their anvil, and began beating it with fragments of ſtone, chipped into a ſhape convenient to be held, which they ſeemed to ply with great dexterity: but their bellows appeared to be the moſt extraordinary part of the apparatus, and furniſhed me with an excellent opportunity of giving them a better idea of an inſtrument which would be ſo profitable did they once know the full uſe of it.

The bellows they were furniſhed with were moſt miſerably contrived; formed of a ſheep-ſkin, from which the animal had been extracted with the leaſt poſſible inciſion, and the hole carefully ſewed up again. The parts which had covered the legs were cut off, and the holes tyed to render it as air-tight as poſſible. The place of the head was ſupplied with a piece of the barrel of a gun, to which the ſkin was ſtrongly faſtened. The blower pre-

ſented this pipe to the fire with one hand, while holding the extremity of the ſkin with the other, he alternately preſſed it towards, and drew it from the tube, nor would this fatiguing method ſtimulate the fire ſufficiently to give the iron a requiſite degree of heat; but, as they knew no better, theſe poor cyclops did not ſeem to conceive it any hardſhip. I pitied them, and the pains I ſaw them take redoubled the pleaſure I promiſed myſelf in furniſhing them with a more convenient inſtrument.

I had much trouble to make them comprehend how ſuperior our contrivance was to theirs, and not being certain that I had furniſhed them with any ideas they would be able to reduce to practiſe, was reſolved to join example to precept, and demonſtrate the ſuperiority of the machine I had been deſcribing.

In

In purſuance of this reſolution, I ſent one of my people to the camp for two pieces of board, part of an old ſummer *Kros*, a ſmall hoop, ſome nails, a hammer, ſaw, and other tools I ſhould have occaſion for, and preſently produced a very clumſy pair of bellows, which had about the ſame force as thoſe commonly uſed in kitchens. I ſupplied the place of an iron pipe, with an old tooth-pick caſe, whoſe end I ſawed off, and, as I only meant theſe for a model, the ſubſtitute did tolerably well.

Having finiſhed my machine, I placed it on the ground, at a convenient diſtance from the fire, and driving in a couple of ſtakes, faſtened it to them with ſome packthread, leaving ſufficient ſpace for the claper to play eaſily.

One muſt have ſeen the attention with which theſe *Caffrees* watched all my motions,

tions, and the incertitude, or rather deſire they expreſſed to know whence all this preparation tended, to form an adequate idea of the intereſt they took in it; but when I had got them faſtened to my mind, they could not contain their exclamations of rapture and aſtoniſhment, on ſeeing that with an eaſy motion of one hand I could give the fire a much greater degree of activity than they could with all their labour. I put in ſome ſmall pieces of iron, and convinced them I could make them much hotter in three minutes than they could have done in half an hour; this gave the finiſhing ſtroke to their ſurprize. In a ſeeming extaſy they leaped about the fire, blowed it by turns, then clapping their hands, expreſſed ſatisfaction by a thouſand extravagant geſtures.

When the firſt moments of ſurprize were over, they entreated me to preſent them with this wonderful machine, and

ſeemed

ſeemed to attend my anſwer with inquietude, ſcarcely believing I could perſuade myſelf to part with what appeared to them ſo eſtimable.

I ſhall be delighted to hear, at ſome future period, that they uſe my bellows, have improved on the model; and remember the ſtranger who gave them the idea of an inſtrument ſo neceſſary in metallurgy.

CHAP-

# CHAPTER XII.

ATTACHMENT OF THE CAFFREES TO THEIR CATTLE AND DOGS—FOUR SPIES DETECTED IN THE CAMP—THE CAFFREES GREATLY ALARMED AT IT.

THE inhabitant of *Caffraria* lives ſo familiarly with his cattle, and ſpeaks to them in ſo kind an accent, that they punctually obey his voice. As they are not tormented by their conductors, theſe pacific animals never attempt to make any miſchievous uſe of the weapons with which they are ſupplied by nature. Thoſe who have the care of milking the cows, have

have no occaſion to tye them. I have already mentioned the inſtinct which in this part of Africa teaches that animal to retain its milk for her young. The means the *Caffrees* make uſe of to counteract this, is different from that adopted by the *Hottentots:* they faſten a cord to one of the hind feet of the animal, which a man pulls with all his ſtrength; incommoded by having its leg drawn in this manner from under it, the creature gives its milk freely.

Whatever may occaſion this difference between the African cows and thoſe of Europe, there is no doubt of its exiſtence, and that ſome ſuch expedient is neceſſary, and in general uſed among the ſavages.

They milk into thoſe baſkets I have already deſcribed; theſe are excluſively fabricated by the women; the ſize depends entirely on the fancy of the maker, but the form is conſtantly the ſame. Being very light,

light, and not made of brittle materials, they are, without contradiction, very ſerviceable. The *Caffree* women were not idle while at my camp, they had brought plenty of ruſhes, and employed themſelves in making theſe baſkets, which when they had worked with all the art they were miſtreſſes of, they wiſhed to exchange with me for hardware.

They are always well waſhed before they attempt to put milk in them, not indeed, from an idea of cleanlineſs, but to ſwell the ruſhes, and render them capable of containing liquids; for, to confeſs the truth, they are not very delicate or careful in cleaning theſe utenſils, which are frequently very diſguſting. They had a cuſtom of bringing a baſket of milk every evening, which my *Hottentots* and *Kees*, who were not ſo difficult as their maſter, enjoyed the benefit of. I took care, however, not to let my neighbours ſee my repug-

repugnance, not wiſhing either to afflict or humiliate them by refuſing to partake of their preſents: for it has always been my maxim never to ridicule, or contradict the manners or cuſtoms of any nation I might happen to be among, nothing being more grating to the diſpoſition of a people; and it is certain nothing can be more indecent or abſurd.

I am concerned at having to reproach one of the moſt amiable and ſocial of nations with this vice, and to ſee them remarked for it by their neighbours.—Should we be ſurpriſed at not finding at London the airs, the faſhions, and amuſements of the agreeable flirts that inhabit the banks of the Seine? A ſenſible man will never openly reprove the practice of the country he viſits; however ridiculous their prejudices may happen to appear to him, he will ſeem to reſpect, becauſe he has no right to contradict them; and this behaviour

behaviour (while he gives free play to his reflections) will be ſure to gain him the good will of every one, however they may happen to differ among themſelves. For me, I can accommodate myſelf, with the greateſt facility, to the manners of the country where I happen to reſide; there is nothing I prefer to roaſt-beef and pudding when I eat them in England; I could mingle with the *Laplanders*, and partake of their train-oil without repugnance; and in Africa, content with the broiled collops of the *Hottentots*, I could eaſily forget bread, and think corn an unneceſſary luxury.

However fond the *Caffree* may be of his cattle, they do not entirely engroſs his attention; indeed, his partiality for his dog ſeems moſt predominant, and the attention beſtowed on him rather border on the ridiculous; while the gratitude of the animal ſeems proportioned to the kindneſs with which he is treated.

My

My pack was never ſo much careſſed, or fed ſo plentifully as during the time the *Caffrees* were with me. My great dog *gager*, was particularly an object of admiration; they were continually avering that it was impoſſible to form a conception of a more beautiful animal, and he was ſo great a favourite that there was hardly a man in the party who would not have purchaſed him at the expence of a dozen of his oxen.

It muſt be confeſſed *gager* was one of the fineſt dogs in the country: neither he nor his fellow animals ever quitted the *Kraal* of the *Caffrees* but with regret; and uſually ſpent the major part of the day there. The good people never checked them for putting their noſes in the baſkets and lapping as much milk as they pleaſed.

I am perſuaded (though they every night ſlept about my tent) they would

have been of little ſervice to me, had I apprehended any thing from theſe ſavages; they were ſo firmly attached to them, and ſeemed ſo much to have forgot my people, that when any one of the *Hottentots* happened to be later than uſual from the camp, he was forced to call out to his comrades to hold the dogs, and prevent them from attacking him.

Had I apprehended any danger from the *Caffrees*, I ſhould have endeavoured to prevent this; but as I entertained no ſuch ſuſpicions, I did not wiſh to deprive them of a felicity that helped to attach them more firmly to my perſon, but giving them every pardon and indulgence, endeavoured to mark the confidence I put in them.

In the ſituation I then was, it would have been extremely impolite to have expreſſed any apprehenſions reſpecting my viſitors,

viſitors, ſince by ſo doing, I ſhould only have added to the vain terrors of my *Hottentots*, who were already alarmed to ſuch a degree that all my confidence, with every poſſible demonſtration of the friendly diſpoſitions of theſe people, could never obliterate their ſuſpicions. *Caffraria*, in the ideas of my people, was the tomb in which they had reſolved neither to be accomplices nor fall victims to my imprudence, nor could the fear of puniſhment on their return to the Cape, nor threats of chaſtiſing on the ſpot, ſuch weak deſerters, prevail over their fears.

This change in the temper of my *Hottentots* appeared the ſtranger to me, as I had not before been accuſtomed to the leaſt degree of obſtinacy or contradiction. It is true they always ſeemed averſe to the expedition, even before our arrival at *Bruyntjes-Hoogte*, where I was ſo diſagreebly and cruelly abandoned by the

*Hoord* that had for ſome time accompanied me; but our preſent circumſtances were widely different, we had not then received any friendly aſſurance from the *Caffrees*, we had never met with any of them, their manners, character, and mode of living were utterly unknown, and prejudice, as uſual, had magnified every idea of danger, and preſented them to our imaginations as a people ſanguinary and ferocious. The propoſition, therefore, to croſs their country, even to the ſea, might reaſonably be ſuppoſed to alarm men who have no great ſhare of fortitude or intrepidity; but at preſent a refuſal ſeemed the effect of obſtinacy and diſobedience, or of diſguſt and fatigue on the contemplation of ſo long a journey. Other cauſes might contribute to this backwardneſs, which I then knew nothing of, nor became acquainted with, till it was too late.

Notwithſtanding every impediment, I was

was fully determined to adhere to my plan. I could not bear the idea that my people, who had until now been ſo ſubmiſſive to my will, ſhould flatter themſelves with having made me alter my reſolutions, or dictating to their chief, as a prudential law, what I knew to be the ſuggeſtions of puſillanimity. I tormented my imagination (if I may uſe the expreſſion) and contrived a thouſand expedients to extricate myſelf from the embaraſſing delemma in which I was plunged.

I counted on *Klaas* as on myſelf; I was equally certain of old *Swanepoel*, of the huntſman *Zean*, who had followed me from the valley of *Soet-Melk*, and ſhot my firſt *Tzeiran*; *Pit* and *Adam* ſeemed alſo well diſpoſed; and the couſin of *Narina*, with two of his companions, had offered their ſervice: it muſt be confeſſed the three laſt were unacquainted with the uſe of fire-arms, and would have been

almoſt as much intimidated at firing a piece as ſtanding in the way of the ball; yet they helped to make up a number, and were, therefore, of ſome conſideration in the party.

I was fully reſolved to hazard the journey with theſe eight men, but my plan being not yet thoroughly digeſted, I thought it moſt prudent to poſtpone announcing it to my *Hottentots* till after the departure of the *Caffrees*.

A circumſtance now happened, which placed this matter in a new light. *Klaas* returning one afternoon from hunting, entered my tent, and informed me that four *Baſtard-whites* had concealed themſelves in my camp ever ſince morning, and he ſuſpected they were ſpies from *Bruyntjes-Hoogte*, employed by the coloniſts. He had picked out of the converſation of theſe four rogues, that the whites

whites had been informed of the arrival of the *Caffrees*, and were ſurpriſed and murmured at my having treated with ſo much cordiality their mortal enemies. *Klaas* conjured me to be on my guard till he had made a more certain diſcovery of their intentions, and have an eye particularly on one of my people called *Slinger*, whom he ſuſpected of having held intelligence with theſe four emiſſaries.

Violently irritated at the audacity of theſe people, I ordered them to be immediately brought before me. The embarraſſed and timid appearance of theſe fellows, ſufficiently demonſtrated the culpability of their deſigns. I queſtioned them with ſeverity; demanding by what right, or whoſe order, they had dared introduce and conceal themſelves among my people? This apoſtrophe, accompanied with a threat to have them puniſhed on the ſpot, with the anger that animated my

countenance, diſconcerted them ſo much that they were unable to reply. I added, whoever had been ſo bold as to introduce them, merited my anger, and deſerved to be puniſhed as a traitor; that I ſhould not now proceed to extremities, but, whatever their commiſſion was, they might inform thoſe who had employed them of every thing they had obſerved in my camp; that abſolutely independent and free to proſecute my own deſigns, I owed no one any account of my actions, and that a conduct void of reproach, placed me above the reach of fear; that being a friend to mankind in general, I held traitors of every nation in abhorrence; being unconnected with any ſet of people I eſpouſed none of their quarrels, had none with the *Caffrees*, with whom I was ſurrounded, and to whom I ſhould be happy to render every good office, that ſincere friends and worthy people have an undoubted right to expect from every juſt and

compaſſionate man; that I would be reſponſible for the behaviour of the *Caffrees* as long as they remained with me, and the equity that conſtrained me to intereſt myſelf in their defence, while they conducted themſelves peaceably, would equally oblige me to turn my arms againſt them the moment they diſcovered deſigns inimical to the peace of the colonies; I concluded, with an aſſurance, that I was ſufficiently inſtructed in the motives of both parties, to be convinced theſe ſavages were peaceably inclined, and would never commence hoſtilities.

After this diſcourſe, I ordered the ſpies to be conducted out of ſight of my camp, by four of my *Hottentots*, armed with muſkets, and aſſured them, if ever, under any pretext whatever, they ſet foot in my camp clandeſtinely, I would treat them like beaſts of prey, or any others who ſhould dare obtrude themſelves with ſimilar intentions.

I ob-

I obſerved that theſe laſt menaces made great impreſſion on my *Hottentots*, and when it came to their turn to be interrogated on having concealed theſe fellows in my camp, no one dared to offer a ſingle word in his own excuſe. I reproached them with the greateſt ſeverity, declaring I would puniſh, and afterwards drive from me, the firſt among them that ſhould approach the habitations of the coloniſts, with whom I meant for the future to hold no manner of communication. I endeavoured to mark with particular ſeverity thoſe words which were addreſſed to *Slinger*, and forbad him to quit his poſt without my orders.

The *Caffrees*, who were witneſſes of this ſcene, having remarked my looks and geſtures, ſeemed ſtruck with the vivacity of my reſentment, and the conſternation that was impreſſed on the countenances of the *Hottentots*. They knew ſomething that

that had happened in my camp made me entertain great animoſity againſt a part of of my people, but underſtood too little of our language to comprehend the meaning of what they ſaw; yet they appeared greatly alarmed and ſurpriſed at the diſturbance, expreſſing by their looks and actions the perplexity and uneaſineſs it gave them.

*Hans* took great pains to explain this enigma; and I thought this precaution tended to calm the inquietude that exiſted among them, but when they conſidered the coloniſts had been with us, nothing could ſuppreſs the idea that the perfidious and vindictive whites would ſhortly aſſemble, and attack them even in my camp. In vain did I endeavour to aſſure them of my protection—of ſafety, I ſaw no more, that chearful and unſuſpicious gaiety which before ſat on the countenances of my *Caffrees*, and announced the tranquillity of their minds; they ſpake much among them-

themſelves, ſeemed eager in conſultations, and evidently wiſhed to haſten their departure.

*Hans*, who accompained them to the *Kraal*, informed me next day that they entertained ſome idea of his having betrayed, and brought them here to be aſſaſſinated; conſequently, I could not be interely free from their ſuſpicions. They recollected that one of theſe *Baſtard-whites* had been ſeveral times among them on pretence of exchanging commodities for cattle; that, conſidering him as their friend, he had their confidence, and they beheld his return with ſatisfaction, while the monſter was endeavouring to betray them; enraged at this inſtance of perfidy, they unanimouſly reſolved, ſhould he dare repeat his viſit, to puniſh his villany with death. *Hans* concluded, by acquainting me with the reſolution the *Caffrees* had formed of returning into their own country, and begging

begging me in behalf of my viſitors to exchange part of my old iron for ſome oxen.

I peremtorily refuſed this article, aſſuring them I would not poſſibly acquieſce, as the coloniſts would naturally complain that I had furniſhed them with arms; beſides, I had before formed the reſolution of obſerving the moſt perfect neutrality; but iron excepted, they were welcome to any thing I had in my poſſeſſion, and before their departure, I meant to give proof of my attachment; and ſtill further to ſoften this refuſal, which I knew to be a trying diſappointment, I aſſured them, I was ready to make the ſame anſwer to their enemies, if ſcarcity of arms ſhould prompt them to a ſimilar application, during the continuance of the war.

Though theſe reaſons were ſufficiently ſtrong, the *Caffrees* were not to be repulſed

ed by a ſingle refuſal, they returned again to the charge, and the moſt eager ſolicitations were more than once repeated; but I had already formed my reſolutions on this point, and they were not to be ſhaken.

I was too well acquainted with the exagerating diſpoſition of the coloniſts, who, for the moſt trifling article of this kind, drawn from me by the utmoſt importunity, would not have failed to magnify the wrong done them, and to repreſent my condeſcenſion in this particular, as a crime deſerving the ſevereſt reprehenſion.

However powerful this prudential reaſon may appear, I had one, which to me was ſtill more forcible; I wiſhed to ſuppreſs rather than foment the dangerous animoſities that ſubſiſted between theſe parties, well knowing that if they came to blows, at this time. it would be difficult to avoid taking part with one ſide,

or

or the other which would by no means correſpond with my deſigns.

On the departure of the *Caffrees*, I meant to preſent them with a quantity of glaſs, and hardware, which I had ſome days before refuſed to exchange for ſome of their oxen. I ardently wiſhed to perſuade the young *Caffree*, I have before mentioned, to remain with me, but it was no more poſſible to prevail on him in this particular, than it had been for his countrymen to alter my reſolution reſpecting iron; neither my preſents, nor promiſes that he ſhould be entirely his own maſter, and free to return whenever he pleaſed, had any influence on him; he oppoſed all my ſolicitations ſo abſolutely that I found it would be impoſſible to ſucceed. "I "know the whites too well," ſaid he, "to truſt them. They are ever ſtudying "to oppreſs us, and was I ſimple enough "to follow you, after being once reduced

"to

" to ſlavery it would be in vain to remind " you of your promiſe, I ſhould never be " permitted to reviſit my native country." He feared to be treated as the coloniſts of *Bruyntjes-Hoogte* treat their ſlaves; but ſuppoſing he was ſufficiently convinced of my humanity, and reſolution to fulfil my promiſes, he was not certain, he remarked, that I ſhould always have it in my power to protect or ſend him back to *Caffraria*.

I attempted a thouſand times to calm his ſuſpicions, telling him, he ſhould not confound the Hollanders with the ſanguinary and perfidious coloniſts. I demanded if the men I had in my ſervice appeared unhappy, or had reaſon to complain?—that every one of them might make uſe of his liberty, and quit me on the inſtant if he thought he could better his condition: but, notwithſtanding all my arguments he continued firm to his reſolution.

Our

Our frequent hunting, and the above-mentioned alteration in my camp, interrupted in ſome meaſure thoſe familiar converſations I had held with the *Caffrees*; yet I did not entirely neglect, when opportunity offered, to obtain every poſſible information, which they gave with the utmoſt cordiality and cheerfulneſs. The news of their departure made me the more eager to queſtion them, as I had by no means forgot the unhappy ſufferers who were ſhip-wrecked in the Groſvenor, an Engliſh Eaſt India-man.

They could not give me ſo ample an account as I wiſhed in this particular, being ſimply acquainted with the fact. Situated towards the north-weſt, they were farther from the ſea than myſelf, and could give no poſitive account of this melancholy cataſtrophe: they had, indeed, ſeen part of the effects taken from the wreck, which had been exchanged with other *Hoords* for cattle; even the *Caffres*, now

at my camp, poſſeſſed ſome trifling part of the property. One ſhewed me a piece of ſilver coin, which he wore at his neck, another a ſmall ſteel key; they likewiſe deſcribed, as well as they could, a curioſity which had been divided among them. By their account I judged this muſt have been a watch, whoſe wheels they had ſeparated, and formed into different ornaments; and I was convinced I was right in my conjecture, when on ſhewing them mine, they all exclaimed it was the ſame thing, only of a different colour, their's reſembling the piece of coin the *Gaffree* wore about his neck. They added, the moſt valuable of the effects had been taken by their countrymen that inhabited the ſea coaſt, who were in poſſeſſion of a great quantity of pieces ſimilar to that they had ſhewn me. As for the people who eſcaped the wreck, they had been informed ſome were found dead upon the ſand, but that others, more fortunate, had reached

reached ſome country inhabited by white people.

My conſultations with the *Caffrees* uſually concluded with their united ſolicitations for me to accompany them.

Had this ſtep agreed with my taſte, it could not with my prudence; for though I did not believe them capable either of deceiving me, attempting my life, or pillaging my effects, I by no means wiſhed them to be acquainted with the differences I had with my people reſpecting the journey, or that no more than eight of my *Hottentots* conſented to follow me; on the contrary, I wiſhed them to inform the *Caffrees* that we were ſtrong, numerous, and could entertain no fear of them, were they inclined to do us an injury.

I thought it ſafeſt to uſe ſome precautions with theſe ſavages: for example, I

ſuffered none of them to paſs the night at my camp; *Swanepoel* taking care theſe orders ſhould be rigorouſly obeyed. We ever ſlept in our incloſures, which none of my *Hottentots* were permitted to quit in the evening, which is the time the ſavages generally choſe to attack the whites, as their colour renders them leſs diſcernable.

Had the *Caffrees* been acquainted with my ſituation, I ſhould certainly have entertained ſome apprehenſions on account of thoſe I left behind me; but, keeping them ignorant of the exact time and manner of my departure, they ſuppoſed, when I began my march, I ſhould leave nothing behind, having taken ſome pains to make them believe I ſhould ſend my waggons back to the colonies.

CHAP-

# CHAPTER XIII.

DEPARTURE OF THE CAFFREES—AUTHOR PREPARES TO VISIT CAFFRARIA—TAKES LEAVE OF HIS CAMP—BEGINS HIS JOURNEY.

ON the twenty-firſt of October, the *Caffrees* came to inform me they purpoſed to ſet off that day. Every proteſtation of friendſhip and gratitude was renewed; joined with promiſes, that, through whatever *Hoords* they paſſed, they would publiſh how kindly and hoſpitably I had received them, and the riches I had gratified them with on their depar-

ture; after this favourable account, every *Kraal* would expect my arrival with impatience, and welcome my appearance among them with joy. They promiſed to deſcribe my camp, my perſon, but above all my beard, this being an evident mark by which I could be diſtinguiſhed from the coloniſts; obſerving the flag on my tent, they demanded whether I ſhould take it with me? And on being anſwered in the affirmative, expreſſed their joy by loud acclamations. Delighted with the thought of ſeeing me among them, they apprehended my being confounded with their unworthy perſecutors, and affectionately wiſhed to ſecure me from any unlucky miſtake.

After the uſual *Tabes*, I accompanied them to the river ſide; having, with their beaſts, ſwam to the oppoſite ſhore, I ſaluted them for the laſt time with a general diſcharge of my muſketry; and ſoon after

*Female Caffre.*

after the trees and buſhes intercepted them from my view.

The annexed plates are engraved from two drawings I took of theſe people, who were aſtoniſhed to ſee the reſemblance I produced.

The *Caffrees* gone, I flattered myſelf the *Hottentots* in my train would reflect on the eaſy, tranquil manner they had paſſed their time with us, conſider every former fear as ill founded, and conclude by conſenting to accompany me in my expedition. I did not deſign to appear violently intereſted in this project, wiſhing them to be determined by their own opinion of the enterprize: I ſet off, therefore, immediately to viſit the venerable *Haabas*; determined, if I found this deſirable change in the ſentiments of my people on my return, to ſtrike the camp, and begin my journey before they had time to cool, or alter their determination.

During the ſtay of the *Caffrees*, I had ſeen but two *Gonaquais*; I wiſhed to renew my acquaintance with theſe worthy neighbours, and inform them of what had paſſed ſince our ſeparation.

I went to their *Kraal* unattended, they were overjoyed to ſee me. *Haabas* informed me of his fears, and likewiſe thoſe of the *Hoord* on my account, during the time of the *Caffrees* ſtay with us; then aſked me a hundred times if I was ſure *their* retreat was undiſcovered? I ſaid every thing in my power to quiet theſe fears; as that the *Caffrees* had told me they bore no hatred to the *Gonaquais*, knowing they had no communication with the Whites, or other *Hottentots*. I likewiſe aſſured them that the ſituation of their *Kraal* was perfectly unknown to the *Caffrees*; but if their fears (notwithſtanding this aſſurance) were ſtill predominant, it would be better for them to remove.

*Haabas*

*Haabas* embraced this propoſal with warmth; he did not, he ſaid, give much credit to their profeſſions, having been obliged very lately to defend the *Hoord* from their attacks; and being unwilling to ſubject himſelf to a like misfortune, he deſired I would adviſe with him concerning a new ſettlement: the reſult of our deliberations was, that they ſhould gain the weſtern mountains, which extend towards the north-eaſt, at a great diſtance from *Caffraria*.

The banks of the *Sondag* were formerly the limits of the *Caffrees*, whoſe principal habitations were at *Bruyntjes-Hoogte*, the veſtages of which are yet to be ſeen. The expreſs orders and intentions of government (who wiſhed to live in peace with theſe ſavages) were, that thoſe limits ſhould be ſacred; but the coloniſt, who is neither actuated by a principle of wiſdom or ſound policy, finding the lands of his defence-

defenceleſs neighbours preferable to his own, has from time to time extended his limits, and gained with impunity on theſe people, obliging them to retire even to the *Groot-Vis*.

Several motives engaged me not to ſtay with *Haabas*, but before my return, I wiſhed to know whether he could not perſuade more of his people to join thoſe who had offered to accompany me; and in order to remove every idea of compulſion, I aſſigned the three who had tendered their ſervice a rendezvous in my camp, and gave them four days to prepare for the journey.

I could not take my waggons with me, as I could only rely on eight men to accompany me in this journey to *Caffraria*, and theſe were by no means ſufficient for the management of my caravan; I therefore wiſhed to procure ſome oxen for the carriage

carriage of my baggage, as we had but one uſed to that buſineſs, and would gladly have exchanged ſome commodity I was in poſſeſſion of, for more of thoſe uſeful animals.

Notwithſtanding the hoſpitality of the chief, and indeed of the whole *Hoord*, I reſolved to quit them, and for that purpoſe pretended immediate buſineſs: to confeſs the truth, I was in no mood for company, a ſudden and unaccountable ſadneſs having overwhelmed me; my travels no longer appeared in that pleaſing point of view as before; croſſed in all my deſigns, freſh difficulties ſprang up, and depreſſed my ſpirits with vexation and fatigue.

Before I quitted *Haabas*, I did not forget to enquire after the ſick *Hottentot*, though I did not wiſh to ſee him: they aſſured me all our endeavours to reſtore him

him had been ineffectual, that his pains had not diminiſhed, and they now deſpaired of his life. I aſked after the young *Narina*, who was abſent with her mother; I ſuſpected ſome of the *Hoord* were gone to inform her of my arrival; as (in the preſent diſpoſition of my mind) I did not wiſh to ſee her, I ſaluted *Haabas* and returned to my camp.

I immediately began examining my men ſeparately, wiſhing to be informed from their own mouths of the intention of each; and, if poſſible, diſcover whether there was not ſome mutinous ſpirits among them, who blew up the flame of diſſenſion.

I found them unanimous in declaring, that their non-compliance was occaſioned by my temerity, in undertaking ſuch a hazardous enterpriſe.

Whatever anger I felt from this diſobe-

dience,

dience, whatever inconveniences I was to ſuffer by it, I had not power to reprimand them ſeverely. Too many reaſons ſpoke to my heart in their favour, and I ſtill felt my attachment to them as ſtrong as ever. Fear had, indeed, deranged the duty they owed me, but by no means annihilated it. How could they go into a country, they ſaid, from whence a *White* or *Hottentot* ſcarce ever returned?

I conjured them to remain faithful, and not forget their duty in my abſence. Regard was ſo ſtrongly pourtrayed on the countenances of my *Hottentots*, and theſe words ſeemed to make ſo great an impreſſion on them, that I drew a favourable opinion of what I might expect from their affection and fidelity could I have renounced this conteſted and ſo much dreaded journey. I concluded, by promiſing them an equal ſhare of affection for the future; and, ſhutting myſelf up in the tent, employed

ployed the greater part of the night in forming ſchemes for putting my plan in immediate execution.

The next morning I aſſembled the *Hottentots* on whom I could depend, and informed them I was ready to depart, if they were yet reſolved to follow me. To diſpel every idea of danger, and prove I did not wiſh to act with incautious temerity, I aſſured them, I had no intention of penetrating farther into *Caffraria* than appeared perfectly conſiſtent with our common ſafety.

As, from the account of my meſſengers, it appeared uncertain whether I ſhould be able to meet with king *Pharoo*, I ſimply propoſed viſiting thoſe *Caffrees* who expected me with ſuch impatience; and then, turning eaſtward, deſigned to approach the ſea, and endeavour to diſcover the wreck of the unfortunate Groſvenor.

I had

I had the ſatisfaction to find theſe all continued firm to the promiſe they had before made me. I then addreſſed *Swanepoel*, telling him I confided in his care during my abſence, and conjuring him to to maintain good order in my camp.

My three *Gonaquais* arrived at the appointed time; our proviſions and neceſſaries were preſently got ready. I filled two leathern bags with gun-powder, theſe were incloſed in a third to preſerve them from damp; we caſt ſome balls and ſhot, deſigning to take eight guns, leaving the ſame number for the uſe of the camp. I prepared an aſſortment of glaſs and hardware, in ſmall parcels; took my tent, a woollen coverlet, a large cloak, and other effects indiſpenſably neceſſary. My cooking utenſils conſiſted of one pot and a boiler; and I did not forget ſome tea, ſugar, and ſalt. My companions were occupied in rolling up their ſkins, mats, &c. and

and requeſted me not to forget a plentiful proviſion of brandy and tobacco.

The buſtle and agitation occaſioned in my camp by theſe neceſſary preparations, would have afforded me a ſtriking and entertaining picture, had my people been all willing to follow me, and my mind tolerably at eaſe. The mingled air of contrition and regret, that marked the faces of one part of my people, was ſtrikingly contraſted by the loud voices and haughty looks of thoſe that were about to accompany me, who ſeemed to regard the reſt with pity and contempt.

Every thing being now in readineſs, we fixed our departure for the next day, being the third of November.

When our evening fires were lighted, and I was ſeated as uſual among my people, I obſerved thoſe who were to remain

at

at the camp, expreſſed their uneaſineſs for our departure by a number of queſtions reſpecting the length of our journey, the time we ſhould be abſent, and a number of other particulars which demonſtrated their impatience of our return. I ſeized this opportunity of making a gentle exhortation, but without the leaſt appearance of diſcontent; nay I even feigned to approve their reaſons, well aſſured that ſuch approbation would have no ill effect on the determination of my intended companions. In anſwer to the apprenhenſions they entertained for my ſafety, I aſſured them I relied too much on the aſſiſtance of my comrades, and peaceable diſpoſitions of the *Caffrees*, to apprehend any danger. I recommended obedience to old *Swanepoel*, promiſing rewards to ſuch as behaved properly in my abſence; and finally, to obliterate all ſorrow, ordered a general bumper to the ſucceſs of our journey; after which we retired to reſt.

I could not cloſe my eyes the whole night; at day-break I called up my people, ordering the four oxen to be harneſſed, that we purpoſed taking with us.—While we were at breakfaſt, I ordered my dogs to be tied up, as without this precaution I ſhould have been followed by the whole pack, and it was my deſign to take only five of them with me.

Before I bad adieu to my camp, I took old *Swanepoel* aſide, telling him, that if I found it impoſſible to croſs *Caffraria*, I ſhould return in fifteen days; if, at the expiration of this time he ſaw nothing of me, he was to remain where he was ſix weeks, when he was to ſtrike the camp and go to *Camdebo* (his country), and I gave him leave to take that rout even before this time was elapſed, ſhould he ſee occaſion, or apprehend any danger in remaining where he now was. I entreated him to mind my people, to be careful of my waggons

waggons and collections; in a word, on the leaſt ſignal of danger, to think of nothing but getting away in ſafety. "And ſhould my ſtay," ſaid I, with an emotion I could not ſuppreſs, "give you reaſon "to believe I have periſhed in my expe- "dition, take the road to the Cape with "the remainder of my people, and put "all my effects into the hands of my "friend Mr. *Boers*."

The honeſt old man could not hear theſe words without tears. I conſoled him by promiſing to attempt nothing I might not reaſonably expect to ſucceed in, eſcaped from his affectionate remonſtrances, and joined thoſe who were waiting my departure.

*Kees* was among the foremoſt; thus attended by my eight men, one of whom carried my flag, I began my journey, and ſoon loſt ſight of the camp. It was neceſ-

ſary to go a league and a half up the river before we could croſs the ſtream; part of my people, who had accompanied me thus far, returned back when we had reached the oppoſite ſide.

We quitted this river and took the north-eaſt road, ſtriking at once into the moſt extenſive part of *Caffraria*, which agreed both with my opinion, and the information I had received from *Hans*.

We marched continually under the ſhade of the *Mimoſa Nilotica*, the whole canton being overſpread with them. The ground was covered with ſuch very high graſs that it was very fatiguing to walk through it. My people ſuffered more from this than myſelf, for being very dry it ſcratched their legs at every ſtep, and obliged them at length to make themſelves boots, either of ſkins, or woven graſs.

My

My oxen were the only part of my cavalcade that ſeemed pleaſed with this ſpot, feeding as they walked along, without having the trouble of bending their heads to the ground. We had continually before our eyes a great number of *gazells* of different ſpecies, particularly the kind called *ſpring-bock*.

My dogs ſprung a *buſtard* which I killed; it was different from any that have yet been deſcribed, and larger than the European duck; its plumage on the neck, breaſt, and belly, light blue; the reſt of the body red, pointed and ſtreaked with black. The croaking of this bird reſembles that of a toad, but is conſiderably louder.

We continued our journey for five hours, though the heat was exceſſive, which, at length, obliged us to ſtop. It is true, we were in ſome meaſure ſheltered from the ſun by the above-mentioned trees, but

their leaves are ſo ſmall and thinly ſet, that its ſhade is not very ſervicable; there were no others on the plain, but I obſerved ſome large ones on the mountains at a diſtance, like thoſe of the country of *Auteniquas*.

I remarked as we went along, that my monkey frequently ſtopped at the *Mimoſa*, pulling off the briars with which that tree is garniſhed, and eating them with the greateſt appearance of ſatisfaction. Truſting to the goodneſs of his palate, I reſolved to partake of this regale; and found, on examination, that the greeneſt of theſe thorns only are eatable; they are two or three inches in length, and as brittle as aſparagus; but the event did not anſwer my expectation: at firſt, indeed, the taſte was ſweet and agreeable, but the mouth and throat are immediately after attacked with a diſagreeable burning ſenſation, accompanied with a taſte which has

has a greet affinity to garlick; and I found the ſeed, which ſeemed particularly to pleaſe *Kees'* palate, was equally diſagreeable.

On this tree I found a beautiful large caterpillar; it was circled with a black like velvet, on a green ground; the wings white, with brown ſpots; and the body ſo ſoft that it felt like cotton.

I have ſince remarked, that when the *Mimoſa* bloſſoms (which is generally about January) the flowers are covered with vaſt quantities of inſects of different ſpecies; conſequently, the cantons, where theſe trees moſt abound, are convenient for the ſtudy of this part of natural hiſtory; and, at the ſame time, collect an infinity of birds, who are attracted by, and feed on them.

The firſt time we halted, I ſkinned the

*buſtard* I had ſhot, and made an excellent meal of it, while my men uſed the proviſions we had brought with us. My oxen had ſo well regaled themſelves by the way, that we no ſooner ſtopped than they laid down to ſleep, and, notwithſtanding the loads on their backs, the height of the graſs entirely intercepted them from our view.

The afternoon became cloudy, and we were aſſailed by a dreadful ſtorm, accompanied by thunder; notwithſtanding this, we purſued our journey, for finding no ſhelter where we dined, the inconvenience ariſing from the bad weather, was not augmented by travelling. By five o'clock in the evening we were ſo fatigued, that finding it impoſſible to proceed, I ordered the ſmall tent we had with us to be erected, kindled ſeveral large fires, and having dried myſelf as well as our preſent circumſtances would permit, retired to reſt; my people

people, laid on mats and covered with ſkins to ſhelter them from the rain, did the ſame. The dampneſs of the earth ſoon penetrated the coverlet on which I had ſtretched myſelf, and the rain, that fell without intermiſſion, ſoaking through the tent, and overflowing the *Hottentots*, rendered this ſituation ſo diſagreeable that we began to prepare for our departure before day-break.

*Hans* aſſerted we were at no great diſtance from a *Caffree Kraal*, which had been deſtroyed by the coloniſts. The riſing ſun diſperſing the clouds, reanimated my ſpirits, and I reſolved to gain this ſpot, which would afford us a comfortable ſhelter; but after eleven hours march, I found we had yet three leagues farther to go.—The wearineſs of our oxen, approach of evening, and meeting with a charming rivulet, made me determine to remain where I was for the night.

Every

Every league we proceeded the *Mimoſa* became ſcarcer, and not ſo flouriſhing.—From our encampment (which was on a gentle eminence) we could diſcover a very high mountain, which my people thought they recognized, and I could plainly diſtinguiſh by my glaſs it was that adjoining to *Koks-Kraal*, which might now be about twelve or fifteen leagues diſtant.

When the oxen were unloaded, and my tent pitched, I took a walk by the ſide of the ſtream, which I judged, after many windings, diſcharges itſelf into the *Groot-Vis*. In this excurſion I ſhot a bird I was unacquainted with, it was a kind of cuckow, which, notwithſtanding its affinity to that I have before deſcribed, (and which is likewiſe ſpoken of by Buffon, under the name of the *Coucou-verd-doré* of the Cape), I have great reaſon to believe of another ſpecies, its note being totally different. I loſt much time in purſuing

ſuing the female, which is very ſhy: I could compare her to nothing but an artful coquette, who every moment flattered my hopes, and when I thought myſelf ſure of her, inſtantly flew to a greater diſtance than ever. I was employed in this purſuit a whole hour, and at length loſt her entirely in a thick wood.

I arrived at the tent juſt as one of my men was bringing in a kind of *gazell*, called a *Gnou*. This ſpecies was firſt noticed by Mr. Gordon, and the deſcription he ſent to the Profeſſor Allaman, which that gentleman has ſince publiſhed, is very exact, though it is to be regretted that the figure is very defective; and ill executed. This animal (whoſe form reſembles a ſmall ox) is not better known by the engraving in the French tranſlation of Doctor Sparman; for the artiſt, or the deſign from which he copied, not content with giving it the cheſt and loins of a horſe, has alſo added

added a horſe's tail, though the *Gnou* has one exactly like an ox.

The *Hottentots* call it *Nou*, which word is preceded by a cluck of the ſecond kind, (as before deſcribed), and it was probably this ſound that influenced colonel Gordon to add the *g* to the proper name, which in pronunciation produces an effect ſomething ſimilar. Doctor Sparman writes it *Gnu*, becauſe the Swedes and Germans pronounce the *tu*, like *ou*. Tranſlators ſhould take into conſideration the confuſion occaſioned by ſuch errors relative to the proper names of animals, which it is eſſential to deſcribe exactly.

The night paſſed quietly; we heard, indeed, the roaring of lions in the mountains, but that did not give us any uneaſineſs, as we thought ourſelves and cattle out of danger; having taking the precaution to confine our horſes and oxen to the ſpot by means of long bridles.

# CHAPTER XIV.

ARRIVES AT A DESERTED KRAAL—ACCOUNT OF TREES, MOSS, &C.—DESCRIPTION OF A PARTICULAR KIND OF GAZELL—ARRIVES AT ANOTHER KRAAL.

ON the fifth of the month we ſet out very early, and arrived at the *Kraal* we had expected to reach the night before, but did not find a ſingle inhabitant. The greater part of the huts were entire, ſeven of them ſtood near each other, the reſt, to the number of fifty or ſixty, were ſcattered over a ſpace of half a league. Here, for the firſt time ſince my quiting the colonies, I diſcovered ſome ſigns of cul-

cultivation, the natives ſowing a kind of millet, known by the name of *Caffrarian Corn*.

Each perſon, after chooſing the ſpot he means to cultivate, erects his hut in the centre; which is the reaſon their dwellings are not huddled together like thoſe of the *Hottentots*. It appeared that the inhabitants of this *Kraal* had been recently ſurpriſed by the coloniſts; for we found a number of dead bodies half devoured by the wild beaſts. Some fields of corn, ready for cutting, had become the haunt of a number of *gazells*, who having nearly laid them waſte; we let looſe our oxen to complete the treſpaſs.

I took up my reſidence in the tent as uſual, while the *Hottentots* occupied the ſeven adjoining huts. They cut down large branches of trees and covered my tent in ſuch a manner, that it could hardly be

be diſtinguiſhed from one. Juſt before us ran a ſpring over a pebble bottom; a few ſcattered *Mimoſa* trees grew here and there; while at a ſmall diſtance from our camp, roſe a majeſtic foreſt, in which I generally paſſed the heat of the day: a number of trodden paths, in a hundred different directions, plainly ſhewed the ſpot had been much and long frequented.

I ſaw a number of trees which I had before obſerved in the country of *Autene-quas*; the *Cois-puant* abounds on all ſides, this I have already obſerved, grows in the bay of *Lagoa*, from whence the inhabitants of the Cape procure it for cabinet-work; but the price of carriage renders it very ſcarce and dear. This wood, capable of receiving the fineſt poliſh, is inacceſſable to worms; when old, it changes to a maroon colour, variegated by light and dark veins. While green, it exhales a ſmell, ſo diſagreeable, as to excite

excite ſickneſs, particularly in damp weather; but it loſes this quality as it dries. The growth of this tree (like all other cloſe compact woods) is ſlow, though in time it ſurpaſſes in height and ſize the largeſt oak.

I alſo remarked the *Geele-Houtt*, (yellow-wood) ſo called from its colour; which, though not ſo much eſteemed as the former for furniture, is very ſerviceable for planks, beams, and rafters. It bears a yellow fruit, about the ſize of a ſmall plumb, covered with a thick rind; containing a very hard ſtone, the kernel of which is the only part that can be eaten.

Another tree, called *Roye-Houtt*, (red-wood) ſo named from its deep red colour, grows very thick, and is ſo ſoft that the tincture may be eaſily extracted. The fruit, which is as big as a large olive, is likewiſe red, and when ripe may be eaten with

with pleaſure: the inhabitants diſtil a kind of brandy from it.

I ſtopped under a *Kaerſen-Boom*, (cherry tree) which had no other merit than calling to remembrance my killing the four elephants. I recollected theſe animals appeared fond of this tree, feeding on its fruit and leaves; as I had never taſted them, I took this opportunity of ſatisfying my curioſity, but judged from the experiment, that elephants alone could be ſenſible of their goodneſs.

The *Hottentots* made me remark a tree which I had never before ſeen, though they informed me it was formerly common in the colonies, and uſed particularly for wheels by the cart-wrights belonging to the company; who had expreſsly prohibited, under ſevere penalties, any individual from making uſe of it. This edict has occaſioned its extirpation, except in

parts diſtant from the ſettlements, the coloniſts having entirely given up the propagation of it. This tree is called at the Cape *Boeken-Houtt*.

Near the ſmall rivers, or in ſwampy parts of *Caffraria*, I frequently found trees reſembling our willows; alſo wild almonds, with narrows leaves, and fruit ſimilar to ours, differing only in the redneſs of the ſkins.

An enlightened botaniſt might certainly, in travelling through this country, find many objects worthy his attention, and uſeful to ſcience; for me, incapable of aſſigning to plants, ſhrubs, or trees, their particular merits, or ranging them in proper claſſes, I only ſtopped when ſomething unknown or extraordinary ſtruck my attention; for example, the chains of yellow moſs, which frequently (in ſome of the cantons) ſhoot to ten or twelve feet

feet in length, and ſo ſurround the trees that you can neither diſtinguiſh trunk, leaves, nor branches, was a circumſtance that to me appeared remarkable.

I found this moſs very uſeful in preparing my birds, and I would adviſe any ornithologiſt, who may be tempted to viſit this curious part of Africa, not to incommode himſelf with flax, tow, cotton, or any ſuch materials, as this moſs anſwers the purpoſe equally well. Wiſhing to ſtock myſelf with it for all my travels, I had one of theſe trees cut down and ſtriped of all its covering, fearing I might not meet with it again. While young, it is very ſoft and ſhort; but when ſix, or ten feet long, it is only fit for quadrupeds, or large birds.

There are, likewiſe, numbers of *Lianes*, which are covered from top to bottom with nets of the ſame growth; theſe are

ſmall and weak at firſt, but afterwards attain the thickneſs of a man's arm, and, like thoſe of America, form numberleſs links, which the inhabitants call *Bawians Touw* (Bawians cords); the monkeys of that name climbing by them to the tops of theſe trees and gathering the fruit, which is about the ſize of a cherry, and of a crimſon colour. Birds in general, but particularly the *Touracos*, are fond of a round flat ſeed, which is incloſed in the pulp. I ſpeak here of the kind of *Lianne* which is ſometimes called the *wild grape*, from the reſemblance the leaves bear to thoſe of a vine. Theſe natural cords will ſuſtain the weight of a man; provided the branches they are attached to are ſufficiently ſtrong. This fruit is very good when ſteeped in brandy, and ſtill better when conſerved. I have frequently imitated the monkeys in climbing by theſe nets to gather it, and ſometimes in ſearch of inſects.

Theſe

Theſe woods abound in two different ſpecies of *gazells*; the *Boſ-bock*, which I was before acquainted with; and another, named by the *Hottentots*, *Noumetjes*, which I had only juſt a ſight of in the country of *Auteniquas*; not that it is ſcarce, but ſo ſhy, that there is a difficulty in getting near enough to ſhoot it; never venturing in the open country, but remaining among the buſhes in the thickeſt part of the foreſt. The height of this animal is, at moſt, twelve or fifteen inches; the male has ſtraight ſmooth horns, at the diſtance of a hand's breadth from each other. It is of a light mouſe colour, with a rediſh tinge on the back; the belly and inſide of the legs white; its form is beautiful, and ſpeed ſurpriſing. It ſquats like a hare; but no ſooner perceives any one near, than it darts away with the rapidity of lightning; ſtopping at ſome diſtance, it examines the huntſman; and, though the pauſe is but momentary, this is the only

inſtant in which you have any chance of killing it. Its cry, which I might call note, or warbling, is very ſharp, and of conſiderable continuance; it would, indeed, be difficult to give a proper diſcription of this; but ſuppoſe a ſhrill whiſtling, preſently interrupted by ſounds like thoſe produced by a tabor with ſmall bells; and you may entertain no very diſtant idea of it. It is hardly conceivable that ſo ſmall an animal ſhould make ſo loud a noiſe, which very much amazed me the firſt time I heard it. The fleſh is excellent; being ſuperior to every other kind of *gazell*.

Among other birds, which were new to me in theſe parts, I ſhot a ſmall kind of eagle, with a long tuft on the back part of the head; and another bird which I called *Martin-Chaſſeur*, on account of its analogy to the *Martin-Pecheur* (Kingfiſher); its beak is long and red; the back,

back, wings, and tail, of a bright blue; it lives in the foreſts, feeding on inſects, and builds in hollow trees.

Nothing remarkable happened during our encampment at this place; except that every day, between three and four o'clock, we experienced ſhort but violent ſtorms.

On the ninth day of the month, we packed up the baggage, and continued our journey.

My *Hottentots*, according to their uſual cuſtom of giving names to our encampments, called the *Kraal* we had juſt quitted, *The Camp of Maſſacre*.

We took an eaſtward courſe, croſſing a country whoſe graſs had been entirely deſtroyed by fire; the freſh verdure, which was juſt ſpringing up, preſented the eye with a beautiful green carpet.

We ſaw on every ſide flocks of the *ſpring-bock*, *gnous*, and *oſtriches*. As we had plenty of proviſions, I did not fire at the *gazells*, but ſent a few unſucceſsful ſhot after the *oſtriches*, who were too ſhy to let me approach them. The *gazells*, collecting in a prodigious body, ſtood gazing at us; and the weather being extremely hot, the tranſpiration aroſe in clouds from this innumerable flock. In my way I ſhot as many partridges as dined all my people, but did not ſtop to dreſs them till after five hours hard travel. The ſtorm of rain, which came on at the uſual hour, ſerved to refreſh us.

In theſe cantons I frequently ſaw the print of oxen's feet, but by no means freſh; and was ſurpriſed to find ſo beautiful a country deſert, not meeting with a ſingle *Caffree*, though we had already travelled thirty leagues. *Hans* ſuppoſed the alarm given by the coloniſts had occaſioned

caſioned this, and I began to deſpair of meeting with any *Hoord*; every thing evincing that the inhabitants had retired into the heart of the country; and ſhould we chance to meet any, it could only be ſpies; who, devoted to the general ſafety, either ranged the country or lurked in ambuſcade.

As I was chatting with my men, a ſmall flock of *gazells* ruſhed by with great celerity, purſued by ſeventeen wild dogs; I immediately leaped on my horſe, determined to protect the *gazells* and attack their purſuers: unfortunately I ſoon loſt ſight of them, the high graſs concealing ſtones againſt which my horſe ſtumbled every moment, and endangered breaking both our necks; I was forced to rejoin my people.

An *oſtrich* ſtarting before me at the diſtance of twenty paces, I thought it might

might be ſitting, and haſtened to the ſpot from whence ſhe roſe, where I found eleven eggs quite warm, and four others at the diſtance of two or three feet from the neſt. I called to my companions, who broke one of the warm eggs, in which was a young *oſtrich*, perfectly formed, about the ſize of a chicken juſt hatched. I thought theſe quite ſpoiled, but found my people entertained a very different opinion of the matter, every one being eager to come in for his ſhare. *Amiroo*, meantime, caught up the four outward ones, aſſuring me I ſhould find them excellent. In the ſequel I learned from this African what the reſt of my *Hottentots*, and even naturaliſts themſelves are unacquainted with, ſince none that I recollect have ever mentioned it. The *oſtrich* ever places near her neſt a certain number of eggs, proportioned to thoſe ſhe intends to ſit on, theſe remaining ſeparate and uncovered continue good a long while,

while, being deſigned by the provident mother for the firſt nouriſhment of her young. Experience has convinced me of the truth of this obſervation, for I never met with an *oſtrich*'s neſt without finding eggs diſpoſed in this manner at a ſmall diſtance from it.

At half paſt ſeven we ſtopped at a large lake formed by the rains, not knowing whether we ſhould be able to procure any at a ſhort diſtance, and wiſhing to water our oxen, who had none at our mid-day halt. Our fires made, my people began dreſſing their eggs, each in his own manner: they broke the top of one of thoſe reſerved for me, and putting in a piece of fat, half covered it with the hot embers, then ſtirring it with a wooden ſpoon made what they called a mixed egg. Notwithſtanding I was very hungry, and this new food delicious, I could only eat half of one, which at leaſt equalled in quantity

two

two dozen pullet's eggs. Some of my men, after taking out the young from thoſe which were partly hatched, made an omelet of the remainder. I could not help joking them on this delicate ragout; but, being perſuaded to taſte it, I muſt confeſs that had I not been prejudiced by a diſguſt the idea had occaſioned, I ſhould have found no difference between theſe and that I myſelf had eaten of.

The evening paſſed cheerfully, not ſo the night, being diſturbed by the continual barking of our dogs, which gave us the greater inquietude, as we heard no other kind of noiſe, and could think of nothing but ambuſcades of *Caffrees*; for had wild beaſts been approaching, their howling would have announced them. The day returned, but did not diſſipate our fears; we vainly explored every part about our camp, and ſtill remained ignorant whether it was *Caffrees*, or thoſe thieves

thieves, the *Boſhis-men*, that had given us the alarm, not being able to diſcover the traces of their feet, or what path they had taken. On the tenth, without farther information, we continued our journey eaſtward.

This direction led us to a canton where the *mimoſa* trees grew in great abundance. Being very high and branching, they formed a thick foreſt; which having croſſed, we approached a ſmall river that was fordable; we walked along its banks for full two leagues; when, night beginning to approach, we pitched our tent.

Our guide informed me that three leagues further we ſhould find the *Hoord* of *Caffrees* that had ſolicited me to viſit them; as this was a numerous eſtabliſhed ſettlement, very commodious and well known to the ſavages, I particularly wiſhed

ed to ſee it. Thinking the report of our pieces might betray our ſituation, I ordered none to be fired at game. My tent being pitched, and fire kindled, we ſat round it till late at night; when, laying on freſh fuel, to prevent its being extinguiſhed before morning, we retired to reſt as uſual, and our ſlumbers were undiſturbed.

Next morning I ſent *Hans* forward, attended by two of my *Hottentots* well armed, appointing a rendezvous at two leagues diſtance, and within one of the above-mentioned *Kraal*; ordering them to bring me an account of any diſcoveries they might be able to make.

This party returned, according to appointment, informing me, with grief and aſtoniſhment, that they had found the *Kraal* in a good ſtate; but, like the laſt, abſolutely deſerted. We now continued our

our journey, and took poſſeſſion of this new empire, where we found a hundred old huts, ſolidly conſtructed, and ſituated, as uſual, at a conſiderable diſtance from each other. Probably the inhabitants had taken ſome falſe alarm, as we ſaw no ſigns of havock or devaſtation. In one of the huts I found two *aſſaygays*, the iron of which was ruſty; in another, a woman's apron, ſeveral wooden inſtruments, and ſome other trifles which I took poſſeſſion of.—The plantations of corn did not exhibit ſuch images of deſolation and pillage as thoſe we had encountered; here the harveſt appeared to have been peaceably got in. I determined to remain two days in this place; and meantime endeavour to diſcover if any *Caffrees* were in the neighbourhood. I well knew, that by directing our ſteps northward, we ſhould fall into the very center of *Caffraria*, which was what I wiſhed to avoid; deſigning to proceed by degrees, hazarding according to

the

the dangers that preſented themſelves, or the information I might receive by the way. All our reſcearches were in vain, no *Caffree* was to be ſeen.

I ſhall not deny that the fictious deſcription I had been entertained with, of the magnificence common with Aſiatic deſpots (which I expected to ſee realiſed in the ſtate of theſe *Caffree* princes) contributed at firſt to inſpire me with the reſolution of viſiting king *Pharoo*; but my curioſity had not the ſame incitement ſince the *Caffrees*, who had been at my camp, informed me he had no particular attendants, inhabiting a hut neither larger nor more commodious than the meaneſt of his ſubjects, and ran the ſame danger of being reduced to indigence, ſhould a mortality happen among his cattle, the people affording him neither aid nor tax; in a word, he is only a chief like thoſe of the *Hottentots*; the only difference being, that his

his dependants are more numerous, and his dignity hereditary; he is decorated with no external marks of royalty, and enjoys but a limited authority. I now, therefore, turned all my thoughts to the ſhip-wrecked veſſel; which, from the account given by the *Caffrees*, I entertained but little chance of finding; notwithſtand I turned towards the ſhore, ſtill flattering myſelf with the chimerical idea that I ſhould obtain more certain information.

On every ſide we ſaw deſerted huts, but diſcovered no appearance of any inhabitant. The *buffalos*, *gazells*, and other game, abounded in every place we paſſed through; which proves that the *Caffree* is not ſo great a huntſman as the *Hottentot*, truſting leſs to chance, depending more on his flocks and corn than the reſources that ariſe from his ſkill in the management of the *aſſaygay*. We ſaw

ſeveral *elephants*, but they paſſed too quickly to give me any chance of ſhooting them.

Since my departure from *Koks-Kraal*, I had made ſo conſiderable a collection of birds, that I hardly knew where to ſtow them; the bulk and care neceſſary for their preſervation being more inconvenient than the weight, though I ever took care to flatten them that they might lay in the leaſt poſſible compaſs.

CHAP-

## CHAPTER XV.

PURSUES HIS JOURNEY—DESCRIPTION OF THE KOOPER-CAPEL—ALARMED BY THE APPEARANCE OF SOME FIRES—MEETS A COMPANY OF CAFFREES — DISTRESSES OF THAT PEOPLE—RESOLVES TO RETURN TO KOKS-KRAAL.

ON the fifteenth we croſſed the little river, along whoſe banks we had continued our journey till this time; in order to avoid the barren and craggy mountains that preſented themſelves. I now determined to incline towards the ſouth, but finding no beaten path we were obliged to purſue our way as circumſtance

or chance directed. A large *buſtard* roſe before me, which I immediately ſhot: it was ſitting on two eggs, whoſe ſhells the young were juſt ready to quit, being covered with their firſt down. I was delighted that chance had thrown this bird in my way, which was entirely new to me; the male and female alternately ſit on the eggs: that I had juſt killed was a male, its head is adorned with a large tuft of feathers. The female preſently returned; and, flying round, appeared to watch us, giving, from time to time, a hoarſe kind of cry; wiſhing to entice her to the ſpot, I left the eggs in the neſt, purpoſing to ſhoot her ſhould ſhe return; but finding no place convenient to conceal myſelf, I relinquiſhed the project, and continued my journey.

It is probable there was not a ſingle *Caffree* in the part we had traverſed; or in our different encampments and marches we

we ſhould certainly have met with them; for being by no means fearful, they would have ſought no concealment. We were not all of the ſame opinion on this ſubject, which furniſhed matter for our ordinary diſcourſe; ſome aſſerted there muſt be *Caffrees*, who, not being powerful, feared to ſhew themſelves; others maintained there were none, as we had not been attacked; ſometimes we talked of the conduct we ſhould obſerve in that caſe, each forming ridiculous and impracticable plans of defence.

I was of opinion that we ſhould ſuſtain their firſt aſſault, and endeavour to come to a peaceable explanation before we made uſe of our arms, which would inſure us a decided advantage when ever we might be conſtrained to have recourſe to them. I had no doubt but this plan would ſucceed if we happened to be attacked during the day; for the night it was quite a different

caſe, and I foreſaw almoſt inſurmountable difficulties. To avoid misfortune, I had conſtantly purſued my firſt method of ſleeping at fifty paces diſtance from my tent, on which I ever took the precaution to place my flag, that it might be ſeen at a diſtance. This I thought might ſave us from any ſudden ſurprize.

We began to experience a ſcarcity of water, which gave us great alarm. One day when the weather was cloudy, and our march on that account very agreeable, though long, I perceived *Kees* ſtop ſuddenly, and turning his noſe towards the wind, ſet out with the utmoſt ſpeed, followed by all the dogs, who were totally regardleſs of my call. Aſtoniſhed at this ſingularity, I ſet ſpurs to my horſe, and was ſurpriſed to find them aſſembled round a fountain, at about three hundred paces from the place when they ſet off. I called to my men, who ſoon approached, and

we

we encamped near this welcome ſpring, to which I gave the name of *Kees-fountain*.

I ſhall more than once have occaſion to mention circumſtances in which the inſtinct of animals has been particularly ſerviceable, having extricated me from ſeveral dilemmas. I do not doubt but man has received from his Creator the ſame advantages, which inſenſible depravity has made him looſe; for the greater diſtance the ſavage is from us, the nearer he approaches to a ſtate of nature.

Reſolving to paſs the night at *Kees-fountain*, I ſeized the occaſion to prepare my *buſtard*. The gathering clouds announced a ſtorm; I therefore ordered my oxen to be unyoked and tent pitched. The rain fell abundantly, but was not laſting; as ſoon as it was over, while ranging on every ſide to diſcover birds, two ſerpents of a bright yellow colour, ſuddenly ſtarted

up before me; they were of the ſpecies ſo well known in the colonies by the name of *Kooper-Capel*. Theſe reptiles at ſight of me, ſwelled their heads prodigiouſly, hiſſing in a fearful manner; I knew their bite to be mortal, and the facility with which they dart to a conſiderable diſtance, renders them ſtill more dangerous: I fired immediately, one fell dead on the ſpot, and the other took refuge in his hole. That I had killed meaſured five feet three inches in length, and nine inches in circumference; beſides an infinite number of ſmall ſharp teeth which furniſhes his mouth, on each ſide his upper jaw, at the height of his noſtrils, was a hook which meaſured about five lines, ſupplied with a joint like the talons of a cat, or tyger, and which he could contract or throw out at pleaſure.

My *Hottentots* broke one of theſe; I was pleaſed to hear them deſcant on natural

tural hiſtory, frequently gaining more information from their rude reaſoning, than from the ingenious ſpeculations of our learned men. I queſtioned them reſpecting theſe ſerpents, and received more ſatisfactory anſwers than I expected.—They made me obſerve, among other ſingularities, that this hook, or hollowed gutter, is the conductor by which the venom is injected into the wound itſelf has made. The ſame thing has already been obſerved, if I am not miſtaken, of the *Boicininga*, or Rattle-ſnake, which I had often met with in South America.

I remarked on the occaſion how much monkeys are afraid of theſe reptiles; it was not poſſible to make *Kees* approach this, though it was quite dead. I contrived, however, to amuſe myſelf for a moment, by tying it to his tail; and not being able to ſtir without giving motion to the ſerpent, it may be eaſily imagined by what leaps

leaps and anticks poor *Kees* expreſſed his fright and impatience, while his dreaded enemy was in this ſituation.

At night we perceived a fire; which, as well as the darkneſs would permit us to judge, might be at about three leagues diſtance. My *Hottentots* thought they diſcerned the ſhadows of men paſſing and repaſſing before it, and my glaſs convinced me they were not miſtaken. The queſtion now was, were they *Caffrees*, or deteſtable *Boſhis-men*, enemies of all nations, thieves by profeſſion, and with whom no terms are to be relied on? We concluded theſe muſt be the latter ſort, as the *Caffrees* never inhabit the tops of mountains; therefore took the precaution to extinguiſh our fires, and the night paſſed in tranquillity.

On the morrow our firſt care was to diſcover where the fires were, and to whom

whom they had belonged; the weather was ſo fine, that we might eaſily have diſcerned the ſmoke, but, being extinguiſhed, we were deprived of any fixed point of direction, and our ſearch might have involved us in the narrow paſſes and defiles of the mountains, where we endangered looſing our way; but my people, perſuaded they were not *Caffrees*, ſeemed leſs repugnant to follow me on this ſide at all events; we, therefore, packed up our baggage, and bad farewel to *Kees-fountain*.

We croſſed a wood where the *mimoſa* trees were ſo numerous, thick, and buſhy, that we could hardly go ten paces without ſtopping to clear the paſſage; this perplexed us extremely on account of our oxen, but perſeverance brought us, at length, through this troubleſome foreſt; though I am perſuaded that after all our fatigue, wandering, and turning for the

ſpace

ſpace of three hours, we had not advanced more than a league from *Kees-fountain*. Before us was a copſe like that we had juſt traverſed, to eſcape which we continued our way more to the ſouth-eaſt.

Covered with duſt and overcome with heat, after ſix hours march, we ſtopped at the ſide of a lake which preſented itſelf very conveniently. One of my dogs (that had been much heated in purſuit of game) muſt infalliably have periſhed, if *Jan* had not perceived him in the water, and immediately jumped in to reſcue him. I mention this circumſtance, which may ſeem indifferent to the reader, that I may eſtabliſh a fact I was witneſs to in Africa. If a dog, while violently over-heated, throws himſelf into the water, he dies if not inſtantly taken out. In a ſhooting party, I had with Mr. *Boers*, a grey-hound, that preceded us, leaped into a ſtream we had to croſs, and expired before we could reach him.

As

As ſoon as we were encamped, and had refreſhed ourſelves, I ſent ſome *Hottentots* to diſcover, if poſſible, thoſe who had given us ſuch inquietude the night before; in leſs than an hour I received news from one of my people, who ran full ſpeed to inform me, they had diſcovered a company of *Caffrees*; he now conducted me and *Hans* through ſeveral turnings, till we could diſcern ten men who were conducting ſome cattle very peaceably; having nothing to fear from ſo ſmall a number, we preſented ourſelves at a little diſtance; on ſight of our fire-arms theſe people made an inſtinctive effort to eſcape, but *Hans* calling in their own language, and aſſuring them they might advance with ſafety; they inſtanly ſtopped till he joined them; and, on being informed I was the friend of the *Caffrees*, they immediately approached; I preſented my hand, ſaluting them with *tabe*. Their fears ſubſided at ſight of my beard, having heard of me from

from thoſe *Caffrees* I had entertained at *Koks-Kraal*; one of them was likewiſe acquainted with *Hans*, whom he had ſeen in his own country. I led them to my tent, where I regaled them with brandy and tobacco; pointing at my flag, theſe *Caffrees* gave me to underſtand they had heard of me, and expreſſed ſurpriſe at not ſeeing my waggons. Not willing to acquaint them with the apprehenſions of my *Hottentots*, I gave them to underſtand, I was only taking a little turn into their country, which I ſhould hereafter travel through at leiſure.

They appeared anxious to learn the ſituation of the coloniſts at this time, and whether they yet fought them? I gave ſuch anſwers as I thought likely to calm their apprehenſions; as that I had ſeen the coloniſts at *Bryntjes-Hootge*, where they held themſelves on the defenſive, and were agitated by as ſtrong alarms as even the *Caffrees* themſelves.

They

"They informed me, that to reach the neareſt *Hoord* of their nation, would require (from the place where I then was) five days hard travelling; calculating, therefore, the diſtance that ſeparated them from their enemies, at about ſixty leagues, I could, without any deception, leſſen the fears of theſe *Caffrees*, by informing them, that the coloniſts were neither prepared, nor diſpoſed to undertake ſo long a journey; an aſſurance that appeared to comfort theſe unhappy people, who claimed my utmoſt pity from the continual moleſtation they had experienced: for, added to the loſſes ſuſtained by the depredations of the whites, they were continually diſtreſſed by the *Tambouchis*, a neighbouring nation, who, inſtead of yielding them any aſſiſtance, ſeized this critical opportunity of making inroads into ſeveral of the cantons, robbing and murdering the unfortunate *Caffrees*; who, preſſed thus on all ſides, in want of impliments of war and every

every means of defence, acted on the defenſive, having no reſource but a precipitate retreat towards the north: meantime a third foe, not leſs to be dreaded, the *Boſhis-men*, plundered and diſtroyed all they chanced to meet with.

I was aſtoniſhed to find that theſe people had wandered ſo far from the reſt of their countrymen; this they preſently explained, by informing me, that on the firſt incurſion of the whites, they had haſtily driven away their mingled herds, ſome to the ſea coaſt, and others to the diſtant inland parts of *Caffraria*; but hearing of no new hoſtilities, they had wandered thus far in ſearch of their diſperſed cattle: they had, indeed, about thirty with them.

I ſpoke of the fires we had obſerved during the night, and was informed they belonged to them; they did not perceive mine, which would have given them great uneaſineſs.

uneaſineſs. I enquired about the ſhip-wrecked veſſel, but learned little more than I was before acquainted with,—that it had been caſt away on the coaſt of *Caffraria*.

I judged this melancholy event had happened beyond the country of the *Tambouches*, as high as *Madagaſcar*, towards the channel of *Moſambique*. Theſe people aſſured me, that, beſides the difficulties I ſhould have to encounter after having paſſed their limits, among ſeveral other rivers, we muſt croſs one that was too wide to be ſwam over, and muſt advance a great way towards the north to find it fordable; they added, they had ſeen ſeveral white men among the *Tambouches*, ſome time ago, when they exchanged ſome merchandize with that people for nails taken from the wreck, but being now at war with them, they could procure no more iron, which they much wanted: they

concluded by a requeſt, common among theſe unhappy people, that I would ſupply them with this commodity. I had expected the melancholy entreaty, which neceſſity obliged me to deny.

To ſoften this refuſal, I diſtributed among them a part of my beads, toys, &c. with plenty of tobacco. They entreated me to accept two of their oxen in return; I anſwered, that ſo far from receiving what was ſo neceſſary to them, I wiſhed myſelf in a ſituation to augment the number; this reply had the more effect on people who ſuppoſe white men to be the moſt dangerous and malignant of beings. They declared in very energetic terms to *Hans*, who repeated it to me (but with that ingenuous timidity that ſeems fearful of giving offence where it means to praiſe), that I reſembled the only *honeſt man* of my colour they had ever ſeen. This perſon, I found, they had

had encountered ſome years before, near the river of the *Boſhis-men*, where they dwelt at that time, as the coloniſts had not then ſucceeded in driving them further; he was a man, they ſaid, who travelled like me for information. It required no great pains to recogniſe Colonel Gordon in this deſcription; and they were overjoyed when I informed them he was my friend, bidding me remind him of them when I ſhould return to the Cape; and entreat him to make a report to government of their unhappy ſituation, and draw a true and pathetic picture of the miſeries and cruel dilemmas to which the barbarous injuſtice of their perſecutors had reduced them.

I paſſed the whole day in converſation with theſe *Caffrees*, informing myſelf of the manners, cuſtoms, religion, and reſources of this people; their accounts were conformable to thoſe I had before

received; their failings were related with as much candour as their eſtimable qualities. My *Hottentots* found theſe people ſo friendly, that at night they entreated me to let them remain among us; I granted their requeſt, and then retired to my tent to repoſe myſelf, and prepare for the fatigues of the morrow.

In the morning, while the *Caffrees* were preparing to depart, I called my men together; the reflections theſe people (whom they had formerly dreaded as wild beaſts) might have occaſioned, eſpecially as they had an opportunity of converſing together after I had retired to reſt, determined me not to leave to them the merit of adviſing what meaſures were proper to purſue in our preſent circumſtances; on the contrary, I wiſhed to impreſs them with an idea of my prudence and caution, as it might be uſeful in my future operations. I therefore informed

them, that, after what we had heard the evening before of the difficulties we might encounter, with the danger of being aſſaulted by the *Tambouchis* or *Boſhes-men*, who were now ſcattered over every part of *Caffraria*, I thought it moſt adviſable to return towards *Koks-Kraal*; that if we directed our ſteps weſtward we ſhould certainly fall in with the *Groot-Vis*, by following the courſe of which river for ſome days we could not fail of rejoining our camp; I concluded by ſaying, they were all welcome to give their opinions of my propoſal.

The pleaſure that brightened their features plainly ſhewed how much my advice had pleaſed them; this they confirmed by unanimouſly expreſſing their ſatisfaction.

I then informed them, that on our return to *Koks-Kraal*, I ſhould make no ſtay but what ſhould be neceſſary for the repair of

my waggons and preparation for a journey toward the *ſnow mountains*, from whence, paſſing weſtward, I ſhould return to the Cape.

I well knew the latter part of this plan was not to the taſte of my *Hottentots*; for in croſſing thoſe barren and ſandy deſerts in the time of the drought, every one might promiſe himſelf a full ſhare of diſagreeable circumſtances; but, impatient to explore the natural curioſities of that country, I was reſolved to traverſe it, and I communicated my intention at this time that my people might be familiariſed to the idea before my return to the camp, ſince *their* prejudices conquered, I ſhould have the fewer to contend with on my arrival.

Before I parted with the *Caffrees*, I preſented them with a good quantity of tobacco, reſerving no more than was ſufficient

ficient for my people till we could gain the camp; this furniſhed me with room for ſome birds I had ſhot, or any I might kill by the way; for I muſt obſerve, my collection was already ſo large that I knew not where to place it.

The ten *Caffrees* helped us to pack up our neceſſaries and load the oxen; after which (wiſhing each other a good journey) we ſeparated, they going northward, we towards the ſouth.

# CHAPTER XVI.

THE AUTHOR RETURNS TO KOKS-KRAAL—PARTICULAR ACCOUNT OF THE CAFFREES—PREPARATIONS FOR HIS RETURN TO THE CAPE—TAKES LEAVE OF THE HOORD OF HAABAS.

WE were three whole days gaining the banks of the river *Groot-Vis*, during which time nothing remarkable happened. This march had been very fatiguing both to my men and oxen; I determined, therefore, to ſtop all the next day, both to refreſh ourſelves and ſee if there was any thing worth obſervation in the environs.

We

We could entertain no fear of wanting water, as the river was to be our guide; indeed, we had found no ſcarcity while ſeeking it, but we could not aſcertain the preciſe time it would take to reach our camp, ſince high mountains or other cauſes might poſſibly oblige the river to take many windings before it reached the ſea, which would neceſſarily prolong our march.

We continued our journey along its banks for three days, on the morning of the fourth we diſcovered the high mountain, the reverſe of which we had ſeen ſome days after our departure; this occaſioned great joy, as it was an aſſurance that we ſhould ſhortly ſee our camp, our flocks, our wealth, and the reſt of our companions: we quickened our pace, and late the ſame night reached the camp undiſcovered, where every thing was in perfect order; but I could not enjoy the aſtoniſh-

aſtoniſhment this unexpected arrival would have occaſioned, for the dogs immediately ſpread the alarm, and my people recogniſing our voices ran out inſtantly, every one expreſſing the greateſt joy at our return; even the dogs by their leaping and fondling, appeared to ſhare the general ſatisfaction; but another ſight yet more intereſting, was the augmentation of my family, for ſince my departure a ſmall detachment of the worthy *Gonaquais* had quitted their *Kraal* and ſettled on the ſpot I had aſſigned the *Caffrees*, having conſtructed ſeveral new huts. I was informed that during my abſence every thing had remained in the greateſt tranquillity; indeed, the admirable order the camp appeared in, rendered this information unneceſſary.

*Swanepoel* gave me a very ſatisfactory account of all my people, told me that each night they had thought and ſpoke of

us;

us; that the firſt fortnight having elapſed without hearing any news, he could not help feeling a kind of preſentiment that we ſhould only meet at the Cape, as he well knew that unleſs prevented by inſurmountable difficulties I ſhould continue my way.

I muſt own that having been near a month deprived of the indulgencies of my camp, I was delighted to find myſelf returned. What inward ſatisfaction did I experience at the fidelity and attachment of the *Hottentots!* Wiſhing to ſhew my gratitude, I announced with a loud voice that it was *Saturday*; this declaration, which ran from one to another even to the *Gonaquais*, completed the rejoicing: but this is a circumſtance that requires ſome explanation, which I ſhall enter into with pleaſure; for the rememberance of theſe ſimple, though delicious means of amuſing my leiſure hours, while in an

almoſt

almoſt uninhabited deſert, and ſecluded from the uſual means of recreation, recalls the idea of that pure and tranquil ſatisfaction which, in the boſom of the arts, and ſurrounded by every attractive delight, I have ſometimes ſought in vain.

On leaving the Cape I had forgot to procure an almanack, but wiſhing to reckon how time went, I computed each month at thirty days, and as I never paſſed one without an exact diſtinction of weeks, the omiſſion was not very material.

Every Saturday it was my cuſtom to deliver the *Hottentots* their weekly portion of tobacco: if the name of the day had ſlipped my memory, and I did not chooſe to take the trouble of conſulting my book (which was ſometimes the caſe) on referring to them, the anſwer may eaſily be devined, it was always Saturday according to

to their calculation; and on my return to the Cape, computing my regiſter, after fifteen months travel, I found ſeveral weeks had contained two of theſe Saturdays.

I was now ſurrounded by my numerous family, who were all ſmoaking their pipes round a great fire, not excepting the *Gonaquais* women, each individual being regaled with a double portion of brandy, while I enjoyed my tea and milk, which I had for ſome time been deprived of.

I ſpake of the road I intended to purſue, and found that every one of my people was already acquainted with this determination, nor did I meet with ſo many objections and remonſtrances as I had expected: worn with fatigue, they thought all ways good that led towards the Cape, though the paſſage of ſnow-mountains, which

which are the uſual retreat of the *Bochiſmen*, inſpired ſome of them with terror.

I fixed our departure for the eighth, that we might have time to repair the waggons, conſtruct a new tilt for that which contained my arms, ammunition, &c. replace the old traces by new ones made from the hides of two *buffalos*, killed during my abſence, and caſt ſome ball and ſmall ſhot, all which preparations required time; the addition made to my collection wanted conſiderable arrangement; and I wiſhed to enter in my journal the various obſervations I had made in *Caffraria*. Our good neighbours, the *Gonaquais*, aſſiſted the *Hottentots*, while ſhut up in the tent with the idea freſh on my memory, I ſettled my journal.

To judge of the *Caffrees* by thoſe I had ſeen, they are taller than the *Hottentots* of the colonies, or even than the *Gonaquais*,

*Gonaquais*, though they greatly reſemble the latter, but are more robuſt and poſſeſs a greater degree of pride and courage; the features of the *Caffrees* are likewiſe more agreeable, none of their faces contracting towards the bottom, nor do the cheek bones of theſe people project in the uncouth manner of the *Hottentots*; neither have they large flat faces and thick lips like their neighbours, the negroes of *Moſambique*, but a well formed contour, an agreeable noſe, with eyes ſparkling and expreſſive; ſo that, ſetting aſide our prejudice with reſpect to colour, there are many women among them who might be thought handſome by the ſide of an European. The drawings of a *Caffree* man and woman, as repreſented in the plates, were taken from nature. They do not diſfigure themſelves by daubing their eyebrows like the *Hottentots*, but are very much tatooed, particularly about the face.

The

The hair of the *Caffrees* (which is ſtrong and curling) is never greaſed, but they anoint the reſt of their bodies with a view of making themſelves active and ſtrong.

The men are more particular in decorations than the women, being very fond of beads and braſs rings; they are ſeldom ſeen without bracelets on their legs and arms, made of the tuſks of an elephant, which they ſaw to a convenient thickneſs, and then poliſh and round them. As theſe rings cannot be opened, it is neceſſary to make them big enough to paſs the hand through, ſo that they fall or riſe according to the motion of the arm. Sometimes they place ſmall rings on the arms of their children, whoſe growth ſoon fills up the ſpace and fixes the ornament, a circumſtance which is particularly pleaſing to them. They likewiſe make necklaces of the bones of animals, which they poliſh and

and whiten in the moſt perfect manner: ſome content themſelves with the leg-bone of a ſheep hanging on the breaſt, which is thought as pleaſing a decoration as a patch on the face of a pretty woman. This ornament is likewiſe uſed by the *Gonaquai*, as expreſſed in the plate.

Sometimes this embelliſhment is changed for the horn of a *gazell*, or any other thing, according to the caprice of the moment; and I think they would diſplay as much variety and whimſicality in decoration as the Europeans themſelves, was it equally in their power; and are conſtant in the ſame habiliments, only becauſe they cannot ſubſtitute any other covering in the place of ſkins.

In the warm ſeaſon the *Caffrees* only wear their ornaments; when the weather is cold, they make uſe of *kroſes* made of the ſkins of calves or oxen, which reach

to the feet. In the plates I have given an exact idea of the young *Caffree* holding his *aſſaygays*, and a woman ſuckling her infant.

One particularity which deſerves attention, and does not exiſt elſewhere, is, that the *Caffree* women care little for ornaments; indeed, they are well made and pretty, when compared to other ſavages; perhaps too, they have ſenſe enough to know that decorations are more fit to maſk imperfection than to add to beauty: be that as it may, theſe women never uſe the uncouth profuſion of *Hottentot* coquetry, not even wearing copper bracelets. Their aprons, like thoſe of the *Gonaquais*, are bordered with ſeveral rows of beads, which is the only vanity they exhibit.

The ſkin that the female *Hottentot* ties about the loins, the *Caffree* woman wears as high as her ſhoulders, tying it over the boſom,

boſom, which it covers. They have, like the men, a *kros* or cloak of calf or ox ſkin diveſted of the hair; but it is only in the cold or rainy ſeaſon that either ſex wear it. Theſe ſkins are as ſoft and pliant as the fineſt ſtuffs: the *Caffrees* prepare them nearly in the ſame manner as the *Hottentots*.

Let the weather or ſeaſon prove ever ſo bad, neither men or women ever cover their heads; ſometimes, indeed, I have ſeen the head of a *Caffree* adorned with a feather, ſtuck in the hair, but this ſight is by no means common.

One part of the daily occupations of theſe women is making earthen ware, which they faſhion as dexterouſly as their huſbands. Thoſe I formerly had at my camp, finding a ſoil that ſuited the purpoſe, immediately ſat about making pots and other veſſels, taking with them at their departure a quantity of clay, with

which they loaded ſome of the oxen. I have before obſerved that the women make baſkets; they likewiſe prepare the fields for ſeed, ſcratching the earth, rather than digging it, with wooden pickaxes.

The huts of the *Caffrees* are higher and more commodious than thoſe of the *Hottentots*; their form, too, is more regular, being a perfect half globe, compoſed of a kind of croſs-barred arbour work, very compact and ſtrong, covered both within and without, with a mixture of earth, clay, and cow-dung, well mixed together, which is ſpread extremely ſmooth and even, and ſtrike the eye with an air of neatneſs unknown among the *Hottentots*.

The opening, or door-way, is ſo low, that to enter the dwelling you muſt crawl on your hands and knees; this cuſtom appears very extraordinary, but as theſe huts are only uſed to ſleep in, this ſmall aperture

ſure is more readily cloſed, and can be better defended, whether againſt wild beaſts or the attacks of an enemy. The hearth or fire place is in the centre, ſurrounded by a circular rim which riſes two or three inches; this confines the fire and prevents it from endangering the hut.

At the diſtance of five or ſix inches round the outſide of the hut, they dig a channel of half a foot deep, and about the ſame width; this ſerves as a drain, keeping the cabin perfectly dry. I have ſeen, in different cantons, between ſeven and eight hundred huts, but never ſaw one that was ſquare; not that I think it material to the reader whether theſe people live in ſquare or round habitations, but this obſervation proved to me, that the traveller who reſolves to deſcribe every thing, ſometimes proves that his travels have been confined to a ſmall compaſs.

The lands of *Caffraria* (either from their ſituation, or the number of ſmall rivers that refreſh them) are more fertile than thoſe of the *Hottentots*. The *Caffrees* practiſe agriculture, which proves they are not naturally wanderers; in fact, on the ſpot where they are born they generally die, unleſs the ſettlement is diſturbed, either by barbarous perſecutors, or ſome of thoſe cruel maladies to which mankind are ſubject.

An agreeable and durable habitation, ſituated near a ſpring, on a tract of land cultivated by his forefathers, is ſurely ſufficient to enrich the *Caffree* language with the delightful term of *my native land*: an expreſſion that can never be uſed with propriety by the errant, careleſs, indolent *Hottentot*.

I have made a remark, which, though it

it may appear ſtrange, is no leſs certain, that, notwithſtanding the beautiful foreſts that adorn *Caffraria*, and delightful paſtures which ſpring up and almoſt cover the animals who feed on them, with the numerous rivulets and brooks that meander in a thouſand different directions, the oxen, cows, and almoſt all other animals in this country, are ſmaller than thoſe of the *Hottentots*. This peculiarity certainly ariſes from the properties of the ſap which gives the graſs a different quality. I have made the obſervation both on domeſtic and wild animals, which never acquire the ſize of thoſe bred in the dry barren countries I had paſſed through; and I remarked in my travels among the *Namaquais*, who inhabit the moſt rocky and ſteril ſpot of all Africa, that the oxen were the fineſt I had ſeen, and that the elephants and hippopotamuſes were larger and ſtronger than elſewhere; which proves that the ſcanty paſtures of this country muſt be ſalutary.

Induſtry is a leading trait in the character of the *Caffrees*; ſome arts, taught indeed by neceſſity, a love of agriculture, with a few religious dogmas, diſtinguiſh them as a more civiliſed people than thoſe towards the ſouth. Circumſion, which is generally practiſed among them, proves they either owe their origin to an ancient people, or have ſimply imitated the inhabitants of ſome neighbouring country, of whom they have no longer any remembrance; neither do they uſe it (as they ſay) in any religious or myſtical ſenſe.

They entertain a very high opinion of the Supreme Being, and of his power; believe in a future ſtate, where the good will be rewarded and the wicked puniſhed; but have no idea of the creation, thinking the world had no beginning, and will ever continue its preſent ſtate; they have no ſacred ceremonies, and never pray; ſo that

if

if religion cannot exiſt without forms, they have none. They inſtruct their own children, having no prieſts; but inſtead of them a kind of ſorcerers, or conjurors, whom they greatly diſtinguiſh and revere.

I never enjoyed the ſatisfaction of meeting with one of theſe, and I much doubt, with all their credit, whether they impoſe more on the multitude than thoſe of the ſame deſcription, who profit by vulgar credulity in more poliſhed kingdoms.

The *Caffrees* are governed by a chief, or king, whoſe power, as I have before obſerved, is very limited, receiving no tax, having no troops at his command, but being the father of a free people; neither attended nor feared, but reſpected and beloved, and frequently poorer than many of his ſubjects; being permitted to take as many wives as he pleaſes (who think it an honour to belong to him) it is neceſ-

ſary

ſary that he ſhould have a larger portion of land to cultivate, and a greater number of cattle to tend and feed; theſe being his only reſources for the maintainance of his numerous family, he is frequently in danger of being ruined. His cabin is neither higher nor better decorated than the reſt; his whole family and ſeraglio live round him, compoſing a group of a dozen or fifteen huts; the adjoining lands is generally of his own cultivation. It is a cuſtom among them for each to gather his own grain, which is the favourite nouriſhment of the *Caffrees*, and which they grind or rather cruſh between two ſtones; for which reaſon, the families living ſeparately, each ſurrounded by its own plantation of corn, occaſions a ſmall *Hoord* to occupy a large portion of ground, a circumſtance never ſeen among the *Hottentots*.

The diſtance of the different *Hoords* makes

makes it neceſſary that they ſhould each have a chief, who is appointed by the king; when there is any thing to communicate, intereſting to the nation, he ſends for and gives them orders, or rather information, which the chiefs bear to their ſeveral *Hoords*.

The principal weapon of the *Caffree* is the lance, or *aſſaygay*, which ſhews his diſpoſition to be at once intrepid and noble; deſpiſing, as below his courage, the envenomed dart, ſo much in uſe among his neighbours; ſeeking his enemy face to face, and never throwing his lance but openly. The *Hottentot*, on the contrary, hid in the nook of a rock, or concealed by a thicket, diſpatches an unſeen death, without expoſing himſelf to the hazard of a return; thus one is a perfidious tyger who ruſhes by ſtealth upon his prey, while the other, like the generous lion, gives warning, attacks openly, and either conquers or falls. The idea of inequality of

of weapons is not capable of ſubduing his courage, which bears him above ſuch conſiderations. In war he carries a ſhield, of about three feet in height, made of the thickeſt part of the hide of a *buffalo*; this defends him from the arrow or *aſſaygay*, but is not proof againſt a muſket ball.

The *Caffree* alſo manages with great ſkill a club, of a about two feet and a half long, made of a ſolid peice of wood three or four inches thick in the largeſt part, and gradually diminiſhing towards one of the ends. When, in a cloſe engagement, they ſtrike with this weapon, or frequently throw it to the diſtance of fifteen or twenty paces, in which caſe it ſeldom fails of the intended effect. I ſaw one of theſe ſavages ſtrike a partridge in this manner, as ſhe was riſing to begin her flight.

The ſovereignty here is hereditary, the eldeſt

eldeſt ſon ever ſucceeding. In default of male heirs, it is not the king's brother that ſucceeds, but the eldeſt nephew; and in caſe the king ſhould have neither children nor nephews, the chiefs of the different *Hoords* elect a king; an event which is ſometimes attended by an oppoſition of intereſt, and ſpirit of party and cabal, which generally concludes by bloodſhed.

Polygamy is cuſtomary among the *Caffrees*, their marriages are even more ſimple than thoſe of the *Hottentots*; the parents of the bridegroom being always content with his choice; the friends of the bride are rather more difficult, but ſeldom refuſe their conſent; after which they rejoice, drink and dance for weeks together, according to the wealth of the families; but theſe feaſts are never held but on the firſt eſpouſals.

The *Caffrees* have no muſical inſtruments

ments but ſuch as are uſed by the *Hottentots*; except that I once ſaw a miſerable kind of flute among them, that does not deſerve deſcription. As for their dances, the ſtep is not unlike the Engliſh.

At the death of the father, the ſons and the mother divide the property he has left between them; the daughters claiming nothing, remain at home with their mother or brother, unleſs it pleaſes ſome man to take them; and, if this circumſtance takes place during the life of the parents, they receive cattle in proportion to the wealth of their father.

The dead are ſeldom buried, but carried away from the *Kraal* by their family, and depoſited in a deep trench common to the whole *Hoord* on ſuch occaſions, where the wild beaſts repair at leiſure, which preſerves the air from thoſe noxious vapours

pours which otherwiſe the putrefaction would occaſion.

The honours of burial are only due to the king, or chief of a *Hoord*; they cover theſe bodies with piles of ſtones formed like a dome, which may account for that range of ſmall hills which were formerly to be ſeen in the environs of *Bruyntjes-Hoogte*, the ancient dominion of the *Caffrees*.

I am unacquainted with the diſpoſition of the *Caffrees* reſpecting love and jealouſy; but believe they only feel the latter ſenſation in regard to their countrymen; voluntarily giving up their women for a ſmall conſideration to the firſt white that expreſſes an inclination for them.—*Hans* more than once informed me that thoſe at the camp were at my ſervice; and to ſay the truth, they uſed every poſſible attraction to entice me, even in the preſence

ſence of their huſbands; who perhaps were ſcandalized at my want of complaiſance, and the coolneſs with which I received theſe advances.

I ſhall carry theſe details no farther, having ſaid enough to ſhew how much the *Caffrees* differ from their neighbours, with whom they have no concern, but by bloody wars and eternal enmity.

The eighth (the happy day we were to ſet out on our return to the Cape) at length arrived; I took a general review of my waggons, harneſs, and cattle; my collections were in good order, the ball and ſmall ſhot prepared; my oxen, who had enjoyed a long reſt, and excellent paſture, were fat and healthy; in a word, every thing was ready for our departure, which I protracted for two days that we might have time to bid farewel to our good

good neighbours, and make merry with them.

The news of our departure being carried to the *Hoord* of *Haabas*, I ſoon ſaw both men and women haſtening to us in ſmall parties; *Haabas* preceded them, all that were able following to take leave of us. The good *Haabas* preſented four or five *Gonaquais* from a different *Hoord*, who, having heard ſpeak of my journey, ſent theſe deputies to engage me to viſit their cantons. It was impoſſible for me to comply, but I ſoftened my refuſal by promiſing to remember their kind invitation on the firſt journey I ſhould undertake into theſe countries.

During the forty-eight hours we had to paſs together, all was rejoicing and pleaſure; my brandy was not ſpared, any more than the mead that *Haabas* had prepared and brought with him. My gentle *Naring*

and her ſiſter were the only perſons that appeared not to ſhare the general joy; their traits of innocent ſimplicity were clouded by melancholy; particularly *Narina*, whom I uſed every endeavour to conſole, loading her with preſents for herſelf, ſiſter, mother and friends; in a word, I bereaved myſelf of all my trinkets to adorn her,—but decoration did not at that moment employ the thoughts of *Narina*. I gave to *Haabas* and his people all I could poſſibly ſpare, particularly tobacco, keeping only enough to ſupply my own men till we reached the Cape.

At length I took leave of the venerable *Haabas*, entreating him with earneſtneſs, and not without emotion, to follow the counſels I had given in reſpect to his *Hoord*, repeating that the coloniſts, remaining aſſembled in the ſame place, indicated ſome new project and announced ſome freſh treachery to be hatching; and

and as his *Kraal* was immediately between them and the *Caffrees*, they would ſooner or later become the victims of one or other of the parties. He promiſed to take my advice and go to ſome diſtance; that he ſhould have determined ſooner, but waited to ſee me on my return from *Caffraria*: he finiſhed, by ſaying, (with that honeſt ſimplicity and affection that marked his character), that, if the times became happier, by the re-eſtabliſhment of peace, he had formed the reſolution of ſettling on the ſpot where we were encamped; as, added to its agreeable and convenient ſituation, it would remind him of a friend.

# CHAPTER XVIII.

THE AUTHOR LEAVES KOKS-KRAAL — DESCRIPTION OF A PARTICULAR SPECIES OF MONKEYS—MEETS WITH AN EXTRAORDINARY FLIGHT OF LOCUSTS.

ON the tenth of December we departed. In vain ſhould I attempt to paint the grief of the affectionate *Gonaquais*, who, in loſing me, appeared to be deprived of their deareſt friend; I can yet leſs deſcribe the emotion their attachment cauſed in my heart. I gave the ſignal, my men, waggons, and cattle, began the march, myſelf following ſlowly, the bridle laying on my horſes neck, I dared not look

look back, I could not ſpeak, nor am I aſhamed to own, tears eaſed the oppreſſion of my heart.

My good and true friends whom I ſhall never more ſee! you promiſed to remember me, nor is the vow I returned obliterated from my memory, no time ſhall ever eraſe it; perhaps, reflecting on my grief when quiting you, in your calamities you have expected and wiſhed for my return; or remembrance has led you to the favorite rendezvous of our feaſts and entertainments, where in vain you have called for me; alas! I can neither defend, nor give you counſel; immenſe countries ſeparate us for ever. Forget me; let no vain hope embitter the tranquillity of your days, the very idea would be the torment of my life. I have retaken the chains of ſociety, which muſt bind me till death; and though I may ſhortly be forgotten by my kindred and civiliſed friends, my memory ſhall

ſtill live, and the track of my ſteps be remembered among the worthy *Gonaquais*.

From the information we had procured, I preſumed we ſhould find *Sneuw-Bergen* towards the weſt, and that by leaving *Bruyntjes-Hoogte* on the left, and croſſing the chain of mountains, we ſhould reach this canton after a journey of about forty or fifty leagues, as we ſhould be obliged to make many turnings and windings for the convenience of the waggons.

I had heard ſo many different accounts of theſe mountains, that I ardently longed to traverſe them; I knew that their height and coldneſs made them uninhabitable during ſeveral months in the year; this climate promiſed me a variety of new productions, worthy of exciting my curioſity.

We travelled ſix leagues, though the heat was exceſſive; and, about one o'clock

in

in the afternoon, ſtopped on the ruins of a *Kraal*, the ſight of which inſpired horror: the unhappy *Hoord*, moſt probably, having been ſurpriſed and maſſacred, as the earth was ſtrewed with human bones, and mangled limbs; a revolting ſpectacle! which we quitted as ſoon as poſſible.

We continued our journey till four o'clock, which brought us to an abandoned habitation, the houſhold utenſils of which were all gone. Here we reſolved to paſs the night, but were hardly ſettled before my whole body was over-run, and almoſt devoured. I tore open my waiſtcoat, and found my boſom black with innumerable ſwarms of fleas, neither were my *Hottentots* exempt from theſe troubleſome vermin. We quitted the place immediately, which my men named *Flea-Camp*, and pitched our tent on the banks of a pleaſing rivulet, in which I plunged, without taking time to undreſs. *Klaas*

adviſed me, after bathing, to be anointed in the manner of the ſavages; accordingly I was greaſed, for the firſt time in my life, and became much eaſier. Though we had ſtopped but a quarter of an hour in that ill-encountered ſpot, my waggons and dogs were covered with the naſty vermin; and the balſamic operation I had undergone was obliged to be repeated till the firſt ſtorm of rain, which cleared us of our unwelcome viſitors. The common uſe of greaſe, perhaps, prevented my men from being ſo much aſſailed as their maſter.

The new ſituation we had choſen was very agreeable. Sheltered from the north wind by prodigious foreſts, and the plain covered with the *mimoſa* trees, which the coloniſts call *Dooren-Boom*, I had the pleaſure to ſee it in full bloſſom, which I regarded as a fortunate circumſtance. I have before obſerved, that the flowers

flowers of this tree are covered with numbers of inſects, common in this ſeaſon, and which attract prodigious flights of birds of all kinds; I therefore fixed my camp on the plain, occaſionally varying its ſituation. I have no doubt but the borders of this foreſt were originally inhabited by *Caffrees*, as we could not go any diſtance without meeting with antique huts, more or leſs demoliſhed by time. I found the two ſpecies of *gazells*, the *gnou* and *ſpring-bock*. Never did the awful ſilence of night ſtrike me ſo powerfully as in this place; the profound calm, which was at intervals broken by the roar of lions, gave it an additional ſolemnity.

Cuſtom had rendered the neighbourhood of thoſe ferocious creatures habitual, and, after paſſing twelve months, in a manner, perpetually among them, we ſlept without fear, having taken the neceſſary precautions. Each day I added to my

my collection, which I enriched by a beautiful bird, unknown to the ornithologiſts; my men named it *Uyt Lager* (the Mocker), as it was ſufficient for them to ſee us, or even our animals, to make them aſſemble by ſcores, and, perching perpendicularly on the branches, balancing their bodies backward and forward, deafened us with a quick repetition of *gra, ga, ga, ga.* This poor bird ſeemed to ſurrender at diſcretion, for we killed as many of them as we pleaſed. It is nearly the ſize of the blackbird; its plumage, ſhaded with gold colour, purple and green; the tail long and pointed like the head of a lance; that and the wings are ſpotted with white; the beak long and bent, is remarkable for being of a fine red, as are likewiſe the feet. It hops from branch to branch in ſearch of inſects, picking them out of the holes in the bark very dexterouſly.

This

This bird muſt not be miſtaken for the wood-pecker, though there may appear ſome reſemblance, eſſential differences diſtinguiſhing it from that bird. Having one night remarked, that, inſenſible of fear, they came in flights to rooſt in the different holes of ſome large trees, near our encampment, I cauſed ſeveral of them to be ſtopped up, and enjoyed the ſatisfaction of taking them by the beak the next morning, having made a ſmall hole to let them paſs ſingly. All the ſpecies of the wood-peckers may be caught in this manner, though they hide themſelves more artfully than thoſe juſt mentioned. It is a general rule, I believe, with all birds, who have two claws behind and two before, to retire at night into the holes of trees; not that this inſtinct is peculiar to them, being common to the *Meſanges* (Titmouſe) and a number of others.

It would be imprudent to run one's hand

hand into theſe holes, without being well informed what they contained, as they are frequently inhabited by quadrupeds of the ſize of a rat; and ſometimes contain ſnakes, who are ſearching for the eggs of birds; and, though a number of theſe reptiles are harmleſs, yet touching them unexpectedly is very diſagreeable and alarming.

The ſpecies called *Kooper-Kapel*, of which I have before ſpoken, frequently go into trees, and might eaſily hide themſelves in the hollows; this might occaſion more than an alarm, and curioſity would be dearly repaid.

On the ſixteenth, we continued our journey; three hours march brought us to the river *Klein-Vis*, we could go no further that day, as we loſt a great deal of time in ſeeking a part fordable for the waggons, which had been nearly overturned.

The

The next morning we croſſed fortunately; a forſaken habitation preſented itſelf, but I was not tempted to approach it. Some leagues further the *mimoſa* was in great quantities, and in bloſſom; I did not reſiſt the temptation I had to ſtop in this place, as I found a convenient ſettlement, on a ſmall plain, in the middle of a wood of lofty trees; the ſituation pleaſed me, and was commodious for my waggons; the only difficulty was to get them through the buſhes, brambles, and thickets that barred the paſſage; but as we had before overcome many difficulties that appeared almoſt inſurmountable, I determined to attempt this, in which we ſucceeded; though, on the nineteenth, in completing our labour, I had the misfortune to loſe one of my leading oxen, who, dragging violently againſt a *mimoſa* tree, the thorns penetrated into his ſhoulder, and, breaking off, remained there.

We

We drew out all we could perceive with our pinchers, but this was inſufficient, as doubtleſs many remained. In twenty four hours a violent inflamation ſucceeded, and the reſult of our united conſultations were to kill the animal, which was accordingly executed.

The *Touracos* were very plenty in this wood, and, by no means ſo ſhy as thoſe of *Auteniquas*. I found a new ſpecies of the *Calao*, and a number of others I was unacquainted with, among which was a blackbird, with an orange coloured breaſt.

In addition to the pleaſure this diſcovery gave me, it procured me an opportunity of remarking the ſimplicity of the *Hottentots*.

One of them named *Pit*, was the firſt who brought me this bird, it was a hen; I immediately ordered him to return to the

ſpot

ſpot where he had killed it, not doubting but he would meet with the male bird; he begged me to excuſe him, not daring, he added, to fire at it; I inſiſted on it; but was aſtoniſhed to ſee him aſſume a melancholy air, and declare in a lamentable tone, that ſome cruel misfortune would certainly befal him; for that he had no ſooner ſhot the hen, than the cock flew after him, repeating ſeveral times *Pit me frow*; it muſt be obſerved, it is the uſual cry of this bird, as I was afterwards convinced, on ſhooting ſome of the ſame kind. But the ſyllables he had pronounced and which ſo much alarmed my huntſman are three Dutch words which ſignify *pit*, or *peter*, *my wife*; he therefore imagined the bird called him by his name, and demanded his unfortunate partner.

It was impoſſible to quiet the imagination of the poor fellow ſufficiently to make him

him fire at theſe birds; and had we afterwards met with any accident in our marches or ſhooting parties, from whatever cauſe it might have proceeded, himſelf and comrades would not have failed to attribute it to the death of the firſt blackbird.

In the foreſt I met with quantities of monkeys with black faces, but could not catch any; for, jumping from branch to branch, they appeared to ſet me at defiance; their motions being ſo quick that they were ſeen and loſt in the ſame inſtant.

One morning as I was roving in the environs of the camp, I perceived about thirty ſeated on the branches of a tree, baſking in the ſun. The tree was alone, and not ſhaded by any others; I went round and gained their ſettlement undiſcovered, without giving them time to eſcape; though I was certain they could not have got

got away, yet in an inſtant not one was viſible; I turned on all ſides, examining the tree very particularly, as I was certain they muſt be hid, but all to no purpoſe. At length I ſeated myſelf at a ſmall diſtance, fixing my eyes conſtantly on it, and was preſently paid for my perſeverance; for one of the animals ſtretched out his head, and appeared to be looking for me; I fired, and he inſtantly fell. I expected on the report of my piece that the reſt would have run as faſt as poſſible, but was miſtaken, for during half an hour there was not the leaſt motion among them.—Tired with ſuch unſucceſsful ſport, I fired at random, ſeveral times, among the branches; two ſoon fell; and preſently after a third, being only ſlightly wounded, hung by the tail to a ſmall branch; a ſecond ſhot brought him down. I picked up my four monkeys, and walked towards the camp. When, at a little diſtance from the tree, I looked back, and ſaw the

whole party deſcend with precipitation, and haſtily gain the thickeſt part of the wood, ſcreaming violently.

I judged that ſome of them were wounded, as they appeared to follow the reſt with difficulty; but I did not remark, as ſome travellers have obſerved, that thoſe in health helped the lame, or carried them on their ſhoulders; and I believe in reſpect to theſe, as of *Hottentots* purſued in war, that each one is too much occupied with his own ſafety to think of the eſcape of others.

On returning to my tent, I examined theſe monkeys, which were of the middle ſize, the hair moderately long, and of a greeniſh colour; the belly white, and face entirely black. While I was examining them *Kees* entered my tent; I knew his fear of thoſe animals (though theſe were of a different kind) and expected

pected him to be much alarmed, but he appeared to fear dead monkeys much leſs than living ones; he ſeemed rather aſtoniſhed than frighted, conſidered them one after another, and turned them over as he he had obſerved me do; nor was he, I fancy, the firſt monkey that had aped the naturaliſt. A ſecret and ſelfiſh motive intereſted *Kees*; he had, in feeling the cheeks of the defuncts, diſcovered a treaſure; in a little time he ventured to open their mouths, one after another, and to take from the pouch, that is between the cheek and the jaw, ſome ripe almonds, which had been gathered from the *geelhout*, and depoſit them in his own.

The encampment on this ſpot was intereſting and pleaſing to me, convenient for my people, and plentiful for the cattle; we remained here till the twenty-eighth, and even then quitted it with regret. It was one of thoſe ſituations in which I felt

it might have been eaſy to forget other climates, manners, and amuſements.

On the following morning we continued our journey, and after three hours march met ſome *Hottentot* ſavages, with flocks of ſheep, who were going to join their reſpective *Hoords*, which they had quitted for ſome reaſons I did not learn. I purchaſed two ſheep of them; and, our roads laying different ways, we ſeparated.

About three hours after, having travelled ſome leagues, we ſtopped at the *Klein-Vis*, which we now met for the third time ſince we firſt croſſed it.

One of the wheels of my waggon became looſe and ſhattered; the ſpokes playing in ſuch a manner that the ſmalleſt jolt made us tremble; I therefore reſolved to encamp here for ſome days to repair it.

Two

Two days after, according to my calender, was the firſt day of the year 1782.

The *Hottentots*, who knew nothing of the ſolar year, were equally unacquainted with the etiquette that diſtinguiſhes the day of its commencement with us; we had, therefore, no complimenting, no lying flattery, nor unmeaning proteſtations. I, however, put on a new hat in honour of the day, giving the old one to be ſhot for by my people. *Klaas* ſhattered the bottle, which was our mark, into a hundred pieces. I cannot paint the joy he expreſſed on gaining this prize, which added to his wardrobe a decoration yet more precious than the worn breeches I had formerly given him, on our pompous entry among the *Gonaquais*.

The next day, while the *Hottentots* were buſied in repairing my waggon wheels, joy ſuddenly overſpread their

features; and when I aſked them the cauſe of this ſudden emotion, they pointed and made me remark a cloud at a conſiderable diſtance. I could not yet conceive why it ſhould rejoice them, but, on its approach, I found it was compoſed of millions of locuſts. I had heard much of the emigration of thoſe inſects, who aſſemble every year in innumerable ſwarms, and travel from the place where they are bred, to eſtabliſh themſelves elſewhere; but this was the firſt time I had ever ſeen them. The light was abſolutely obſcured by their prodigious numbers; they did not riſe much above our heads, but formed a column from two to three thouſand feet in circumference, and were more than an hour in paſſing us; the battalion was ſo cloſely wedged, that they fell in cluſters, which *Kees* caught up and devoured at pleaſure.

My people likewiſe regaled themſelves, and,

and, boaſting much of their excellence, I was tempted to try them; but if it is true, as we are aſſured, that in Greece, and even in Athens, the public markets were ſupplied with this proviſion, which was one of the greateſt dainties of the time; I muſt truly own, I ſhould have cut a poor figure among thoſe epicures, unleſs heaven had alſo added, to the Grecian taſte, a different conſtitution.

# CHAPTER XIX.

JOURNEY CONTINUED—ACCIDENT TO ONE OF THE HOTTENTOTS—ALARMED BY LIONS—A VIOLENT STORM OF RAIN—SEES A PARTY OF BOSHIS-MEN.

WE departed on the third of January, leaving behind us the chain of mountains, ſituated near *Bruyntjes-Hoogte*, and perceiving thoſe of *Sneuw-Bergen* to the north, which we wiſhed to reach. Though it was the hoteſt part of the year we diſcovered ſnow in the chaſms and hollows towards the tops of theſe formidable mountains. While I was amuſing myſelf with my glaſs, the *Hottentots* told me they ſaw

ſaw a white man; this news inſpired me with the moſt lively intereſt, being ſo long ſince I had met with any of that colour. This man had travelled a long way for the purpoſe of procuring ſalt from a lake, ſituated near the *Swart-Kop*'s river: I immediately joined him. He could not refrain from tears, when he informed me, that on the commencement of the war with the *Caffrees* (in which he had never followed the example of the other coloniſts) he had the misfortune, with his wife, his only ſon, and attendant *Hottentots*, to be attacked during the night by ſome *Caffrees*; they immediately concealed themſelves in the thickets, but at day-break, found his ſon pierced with ſeveral wounds of the *aſſagay*. This unfortunate father's recital excited my commiſeration, I could not attempt to ſooth his grief; ſilence expreſſed more than uſeleſs diſcourſe, and was all the conſolation, that a feeling heart could give. He afterwards told

told me the hatred of the *Caffrees* was irrevocably fixed: an unfortunate event for the innocent, who ſuffer equally with their guilty oppreſſors.

To amuſe this traveller I entreated him to paſs the night at the camp, regaling him in my beſt manner, with tea, and tobacco.

I know not how it happened, but the converſation turned on horſes; in the courſe of which, he informed me, that one of his friends, an inhabitant of *Swart-Kops*, had ſhewn him one he once caught while he was hunting, and not being able to diſcover the owner, had retained it. This account reminded me of that I had abandoned on the banks of *Krom-river*, on leaving *Ange-Kloof*, about ſeven or eight months before. After the deſcription I gave of him, he remained ſo convinced it was my horſe, that he immediately offered me

me two of his oxen for him, entreating a line to make good his claim. My horſe was worth more than what he offered, but calculating the difficulties and ſtop it would occaſion in my journey, while the oxen would be of immediate ſervice, and really wiſhing to oblige him, I cloſed with his offer, giving him a note to reclaim the horſe by.

We continued our way, keeping *Sneuw-Bergen* in ſight, where I flattered myſelf I ſhould arrive the ſame day, but about eleven o'clock the heat was ſo intenſe, that we were obliged to halt on the banks of the *Bly*, and there paſs the night. This river, which is ſometimes a torrent, afforded us but little refreſhment, the heats having almoſt dried it up, we were obliged to quench our thirſt with ſome ill-taſted ſtagnate water that remained in the hollows.

At

At day break we quitted this diſagreeable ſpot, and after three hours and a half's march arrived at *Vogel-river* (Bird's river) I remarked among other ſingularities, that the nearer we approached the ſnow-mountains, the heat became more intenſe. The amazing rocks, which appear piled on each other, to compoſe theſe lofty mountains, being heated by the ſcorching rays of the ſun, which reflect and concenter in the neighbouring valleys.

The general fatigue would not permit us to continue further. In the ſpace we had traverſed, from one river to the other, we had met but one flock of the *gazells ſpring-bock*, but that flock covered all the plain, being an emigration, of which we neither ſaw the beginning or end; it was the ſeaſon when thoſe animals abandon the dry and rocky lands of the point of Africa, to go northward either into *Caffraria* or ſome other well watered country.

Were

Were I to fix the number of theſe animals at twenty, thirty, or even fifty thouſand, I ſhould fall ſhort of truth; to form any idea of the number, without having ſeen them, is impoſſible.

We continued our way through the midſt of the flock, without their appearing much alarmed; I ſhot three from my waggon; indeed, innumerable armies might have been furniſhed with proviſions for a conſiderable time.

The retreat of theſe *gazells* predicted with greater certainty than *the almanack of Liege*, the droughts we ſhould have to encounter.

On the morning of the ſixth, we continued our way up the *Birds-river*, which takes its ſource from the ſnow mountains, when an accident happening that might have been attended with ſerious conſequence,

quences, and ſtopped us for ſome time.—The *Hottentot*, who conducted one of my waggons, wiſhing to ſeat himſelf, in attempting to get up, ſome thorns, he had not obſerved, caught hold of his garment, and threw him on the ground; the carriage ſtill continuing its way, one of the wheels went over his leg.

I ran to his aſſiſtance, and was happy, on examination, to find no fracture. I immediately bathed the contuſion, covering it up carefully with ſeveral bandages ſoaked in brandy; but, leſt my patient ſhould regret ſeeing his favourite liquor waſted, I made him ſwallow a good bumper. Some days after he entirely got the better of this accident, during which time he rode in my waggon.

*Sneuwberg* ſeemed to me the land of promiſe, obſtacles continually ſucceeding each other, and preventing my reaching it.

it. On the ſeventh, at the very moment of our departure, on counting the cattle, I found three were wanting; my people ſought them on all ſides, and at length ſucceeded; but the ſearch had taken ſo much time, that we could not yoke our oxen before ſeven at night; the days were now at the longeſt, the freſhneſs of the evening was attractive; and, as we could not be farther then four or five leagues from *Platte-river*, it was my intention to reach it, and ſtop there for the night.

We had hardly proceeded two leagues before the horſe on which one of my *Hottentots* rode, who was bringing up the rear of my cavalcade, took fright, and, running away with him, came ſuddenly upon us, followed by all the reſt in the greateſt diſorder. The confuſion ſpread, and communicated itſelf to the twelve oxen that were yoked to the waggon we had made at *Pampoen-Kraal*, who, having at

that

that moment no *Hottentots* to manage the leaders, took fright, and, running violently, overſet the carriage and broke the beam, which the oxen dragged after them, ruſhing into a thicket. The confuſion encreaſed every moment, while the bellowing of the cattle left us very little room to doubt we were purſued by lions; ſome ran to their arms, others endeavoured to ſtop the oxen, which drew the other waggons, who began running like the firſt; the reſt of my *Hottentots* were ſeeking fuel to kindle a fire; meantime I departed, followed by ſome of my beſt markſmen, examining the road we had juſt paſſed, determined to oppoſe the purſuit of the animals, and give my people time to prepare for them.

The night was not very dark, we were on a ſandy plain, ſo that we could diſtinguiſh objects at a conſiderable diſtance; finding the dogs approach us, I made no

doubt

doubt but our purſuers were near, and immediately after perceived two lions on a ſmall hillock, apparently waiting for us. We fired altogether without any effect, as they immediately diſappeared. We advanced in hopes of ſhooting one at leaſt, but finding our endeavours fruitleſs, and our fires at this time appearing to be well kindled, we returned to them; our diſperſed oxen did the ſame, arriving one after another, the only ones wanting, being thoſe belonging to the *Pampoen-Kraal* waggon. We heard theſe low at a diſtance, but none of my men cared to follow the ſound; I, however, engaged ſeveral of them to accompany me, each carrying a lighted brand in one hand and a muſket in the other, and was attended by my dogs, who preſently conducted us to the ſpot. The piece of the beam, which they had dragged away, having caught between two trees, ſtopped the oxen; but the tackle and traces were ſo entangled that it was

impoſſible to diſengage, without cutting them to pieces. Three only were now wanting; theſe had broken their yoke, and we concluded were devoured; but, on returning, we found they had juſt arrived in ſafety.

Could inſtinct alone have taught theſe animals that under the protection of our fires, they had nothing to fear from their enemies; or, could they have reflected, that during the twelve months they had travelled with me, the wild beaſts, who had given them ſo much inquietude in the beginning, had never dared attack or even approach them; and from thence entertain a high opinion of mankind, conſidering them as powerful protectors? I ſhall not endeavour to explain this myſtery, but I believe that nature has indiſcriminately endued animals with a ſufficient quantity of intelligence to ſecure their own preſervation; and I have had many occa-

occaſions of remarking inſtances of this kind that have ſtruck me with aſtoniſhment.

Natural hiſtory has a more extenſive moral than has been generally ſuppoſed, the metaphyſic eye looks further; and blind curioſity, which formerly was the principle motive in forming collections, now gives place to more noble and eſtimable ideas; there is no longer any thing trivial; genius and philoſophy have given conſequence even to a variety of inſects; and, within theſe twenty years, a number of theſe minute objects have occupied a conſpicuous ſtation in the chain of being.

At day break, we returned to the ſpot where I had ſeen the lions; by the prints of whoſe feet I could diſcover that one was a female, the marks being ſmaller than thoſe of the male. I followed them ſome time, which brought me within a

little diſtance of my people, a proof that we had been cloſe beſet.

We congratulated each other on having been on our guard all night, and this proved a uſeful leſſon to me to travel no more after dark, in a country I was ſo little acquainted with, and which, I afterwards learned, was the moſt dangerous of all Africa.

I had in my waggons ſome ſpare beams to ſupply the place of any that might chance to break by accident, theſe had been cut in the foreſt of *Auteniquas*. As there was no water in the place we were obliged to ſtop at, and being in abſolute want of it, we repaired our traces for the preſent uſe, and, faſtening the broken beam with two ſtrong cheeks, departed. Great was our diſappointment on reaching the *Platte-river* to find it quite dry: ſinking with drought, we walked up the banks for

for three quarters of an hour, when, by good fortune, we found ſome holes of muddy water that the ſun had not yet dried up.

What a change, from the charming country of *Caffraria!* here was no fine paſtures, or majeſtic foreſts to delight the eye! but rocks topping each other, and dried ſands which became, every day we advanced, more hedious; ſurrounded by mountains of a thouſand dreary forms, and whoſe tops, inclining over our heads, filled the ſoul with melancholy and diſmay. That of *Sneuweberg*, at whoſe feet we now were, is much higher than the others; and, winter ſeated on its ſummit, appears to diſpute with the ſun the empire of this miſerable climate.

My intention was to climb and explore this famous mountain, but as I knew it to be the reſort of the *Boſhis-men*, as well

as lions, I determined to ſhelter myſelf from the ſurpriſes of either; I, therefore, placed my tent openly, fortifying it in the beſt manner I poſſibly could.

By chance I found ſome prints of the feet of a *rhinoceros*; this ſight revived my former ardour, and I offered a large prize to any of my people who could find out one of theſe prodigious animals: we were not fortunate enough to ſucceed, but fell on a ſmall group of eight *elks*. I had never before ſhot any, but on diſcharging my piece one fell on the ſpot. This animal is perfectly deſcribed by Doctor Sparman; the ſavages call it *kana*; it is totally different from the *elk*, mentioned by Buffon, and is no more than the largeſt ſpecies of the Cape *gazells*.

On my return to the camp, I was ſoon joined by my people, who returned fatigued

tigued and diſappointed. They informed me that, during their ſearch after the *rhinoceros*, they had met with a *Hoord* of ſavages, whoſe *Kraal* was ſituated at the foot of the mountain.

I reſolved to viſit them; and the next morning very early, attended by three of my beſt markſmen, took the road to the *Kraal*. We had hardly gone half way, when we were met by five of theſe people, who were coming to the camp to ſee me, but turned back to conduct us to their home.

On our arrival, the children no ſooner ſaw me, than they ſcreamed horribly and ran to hide themſelves; this unuſual fear appeared very ſtrange and greatly diſconcerted me. When I entered the *Hoord* of *Haabas*, and many others for the firſt time, the women and children retired, but without any ſigns of fear or horror. I

was curious to know the cauſe of this; and was immediately informed that theſe people were but juſt ſettled here, having experienced in *Camdebo* (their native country) ſuch cruel perſecutions from the coloniſts, as obliged them to quit it: feeling, therefore, for the whites, the moſt deadly hatred, they implanted it early in the minds of their children, hoping it would ſtrengthen with age; nor were they ſorry to ſee them give this proof of remembering the catechiſm of vengeance.

The men, on the contrary, received me with great kindneſs; they were not ſurpriſed to ſee me, having been informed the preceding evening, that I ſhould certainly viſit them. The *Hoord* contained about a hundred and thirty men. On my way to the *Kraal* I met their flocks and herds, which might amount to a hundred horned cattle, and treble the number of ſheep. This ſcanty ſtock did not announce

nounce them to be in very eaſy circumſtances, and I was further convinced of this, when, on reaching their huts, I found them buſily drying locuſts on mats, having previouſly pulled off the wings and legs: as this maſs of proviſion was already in the higheſt ſtate of fermentation, I took care to avoid the wind, which brought, by intervals, the moſt abominable exhalations.

It was ſix months ſince theſe poor *Hottentots* had taken refuge in this dreary ſpot, to avoid the cruelties of the coloniſts, unconſcious of having run into other dangers; for here the *Boſhis-men* might diſcover them; and they had likewiſe to defend themſelves from the attacks of a number of ferocious animals, particularly the wild dogs, who took every opportunity of thining their flocks.

I exchanged ſeveral articles they ſtood in

in need of for ſome ſheep, which they promiſed to bring the next day, giving them beſides ſome preſents and advice. I was juſt preparing to depart, when a violent ſtorm obliged me to enter one of their huts. It laſted full three hours, falling in ſuch torrents, that it almoſt overwhelmed us; the whole *Kraal* ſeemed on the point of being carried away with it, the floods ſweeping before them ſands, detached pieces of earth, and trees torn up by the roots. The hut I had retired to was well ſheltered, and I contemplated with amazement (though up to the knees in water) the prodigious caſcades or cataracts, that ruſhed from the ſurrounding mountains, meeting and daſhing againſt each other in their deſcent, and reaching the valley by a thouſand different channels. The banks of *Platte-river*, which ran at a few paces diſtance, were no longer diſcernable. I ſtopped till this flood had ſomething ſubſided, then (profiting by

by the firſt interval) I returned to my people; being uneaſy on account of the camp, and wiſhing to quit the hut, that contained ſeveral bags of dried locuſts, which emitted ſo fetid a ſmell, that it was almoſt inſupportable.

The rain continued all night, and the next day the torrents were ſo much encreaſed, that the *Hottentots* could not bring the ſheep to my camp, according to their promiſe. There was no danger now of wanting water, and we found that what was contained in the lakes, was preferable to that we got from the rivers, whoſe courſe rendered it diſturbed and muddy.

The next day the rain abated, and we were viſited by twenty men and ſome women, who brought us four ſheep, and an old cow, of no great value. Theſe people preferred tobacco to beads, which they

ſeemed

ſeemed to have plenty of, the women being ornamented with a profuſion of them. As, on my return to the Cape, I could eaſily recruit my ſtock of tobacco, I was not ſparing of it; my prodigality pleaſed them, and they ſoon returned with eleven more ſheep, which I purchaſed with the ſame article, greatly to their ſatisfaction. Informed I had a dry and diſagreeable country to croſs, I reſerved theſe acquiſitions, as a reſource in caſe of need.

One day, when a number of theſe ſtrangers were at the camp, one of the keepers of my flock came to inform me, that ſeveral *Boſhis-men* had deſcended from the mountains, and drew near them, but had been kept in awe by a few diſcharges of their muſkets. Myſelf and *Klaas* got on horſeback, and, attended by four good markſmen, went in queſt of theſe dangerous plunderers, and ſoon diſcovered thirteen of them; but ſeeing we advanced

ed reſolutely, and hearing our balls whiſtle through the air, they preſently took to flight; and, though we followed full ſpeed, we could not get near enough to hit them. They preſently regained, and hid themſelves among the mountains; nor could I help admiring the addreſs with which they climbed (like monkeys) the moſt craggy and ſteep parts of the rock. I did not pretend to follow, as it would have been imprudent to attack them in their inacceſſable retreats. At a diſtance, theſe people appeared entirely naked; but I judged, from the prints of their feet, that they wore ſandals.

This little alarm was of great ſervice to me, as it rendered the *Hottentots* diligent. I doubled the guard, *Swanepoel* and myſelf alternately going the round, while my faithful *Klaas*, at the head of a ſmall detachment, ſcoured the valley and environs. At ſtated times we fired the carbine

carbine in our camp, which my herdſmen were obliged to anſwer with their muſkets; by which means I was aſſured they were not aſleep, but kept guard regularly. I uſed this precaution for the ſake of order, and that I might have nothing in future to reproach myſelf with. Theſe regulations needed no enforcement, for the *Hottentot* fears even the lion leſs than the *Boſhis-men:* but theſe perpetual watchings, in the open country, expoſed my people to the heats, which began to be exceſſive. I was no leſs expoſed than they, never omitting my hunting; indeed it was immaterial whether I was at home or abroad, as remaining in the tent was impoſſible. Fainting with heat, I found ſome relief from moiſtening my hat crown, but my unquenchable thirſt ſeemed to increaſe from the great quantity I drank; I therefore determined to ſup the water, a method that afforded more relief than large draughts.

CHAP-

## CHAPTER XIX.

THE AUTHOR EXPLORES THE HEIGHTS OF SNEUWBERGEN—ACCOUNT OF THE BOSHIS-MEN—CROSSES THE RIVER JUBERS—CONTINUES HIS JOURNEY.

WHILE we were on the borders of the *Platte-river*, the lions gave us but little diſturbance, as the rattling of our guns on all ſides during the day, kept them at a conſiderable diſtance. We heard them every night, though they never but once approached near enough to give us any diſturbance. The panthers juſt ſhewed themſelves morning and evening on the banks of the river, but later in the night

night they advanced nearer, though we were conſtantly appriſed of their approach by our dogs, and could eaſily judge next day, by the tracks of their feet, how near us they had ventured.

It is neceſſity that renders carnivorous animals bold, naturally they are afraid of man; and, I think, the danger of living in a country infeſted with them has been greatly exaggerated. They are ſeldom met with in the woods, as the only ſpecies of *gazells* found there are not ſufficiently plenty to ſatisfy their voracious appetite, which makes them prefer following numerous herds, that travel from one canton to another, among which they ſometimes make a terrible carnage.

My neighbours, ſeeing me determined to climb the heights of *Sneuwberg*, adviſed me to keep on my guard, and not make any long ſtay there, as the *Boſhis-men* were

were in conſiderable numbers, and might aſſemble all their force.

My intentions were not to take my whole caravan, indeed that project would have been impracticable; I, therefore, determined to explore ſome of the ſummits, accompanied by ſeveral of my beſt markſmen, between ſun and ſun. In purſuance of this plan, I removed my camp, placing it at the foot of the mountain, within three hundred paces of the *Hoord* of *Hottentots*.

In conſequence of informations I had received, I expected to find on the ſummit a conſiderable vulcano, emitting ſmoke and flame, but found no appearance of any ſuch phœnomenon. From this eminence, by the help of my glaſs, I could diſcern immenſe countries to the north, bounded only by the horizon. I frequently found on the flats, or in the crevices of the

mountain, pebbles and ſand, exactly reſembling thoſe on the Downs, but ſought in vain for ſhells, or any ſigns of conchylia.

I was more fortunate with reſpect to birds, having the ſatisfaction to ſhoot ſome that were very curious, particularly one of the ſpecies called *veuve* (widow-bird), which was extremely beautiful. Theſe harbour in the high graſs, with which theſe mountains are almoſt entirely covered.

In all our excurſions, which always terminated at ſun-ſet, I never but once ſaw any *Boſhis-men*, (except the fifteen before mentioned), but one day we obſerved three, that were traverſing the ſide of a mountain oppoſite to that on which we ſtood. Theſe vagabonds are not, as ſome have falſly advanced, a particular nation of ſavages, natives of the country they inhabit. The word *Boſhis-men* is derived

derived from two Dutch words, which ſignify, *men of the wood*, or *thickets*; by which appellation the Dutch inhabitants, whether in Africa or America, diſtinguiſh the robbers, or aſſaſſins, that deſert the colonies to eſcape chaſtiſement; ſuch as in the French iſlands are called *Negres Marrons* (run away negroes); thus, ſo far from being a particular nation (which has been very recently aſſerted), they are a collection of Mulattos, Negroes, Baſtard-whites, and, ſometimes, Hottentots; mongrels of all kinds, and every ſhade of colour, reſembling each other only in treachery and villainy; they may truly be called land pirates, living without law or order, and abandoned to every exceſs of miſery and deſpair, being hopeleſs deſerters, who have no reſource but pillage and murder. They paſs their lives on the tops of the ſteepeſt rocks, in almoſt inacceſſable caverns; the height of the ſituation giving them an extenſive view of the ſur-

rounding country; and, no ſooner do they perceive travellers, or ſcattered flocks, than they dart down unawares upon their prey, killing man and beaſt without diſtinction, and, loaded with the ſpoil, regain thoſe dens, which, like the lion or tyger, they only quit when inſtigated by freſh wants to the commiſſion of new maſſacres; but as villainy is uſually attended by cowardice, one determined man, well armed, will frequently awe a troop of theſe wretches, who ever avoid thoſe habitations which they know poſſeſs a maſter; artifice and trick, the pitiful ſubterfuges of weak daſtardly minds, are the only means by which they accompliſh their dark deſigns.

In places where the track of their feet might give alarm to the inhabitants, and occaſion them to be purſued, they make uſe of means which European robbers, endowed with more boldneſs, or leſs patience,

tience, perhaps never deviſed: if bare-foot, they walk backwards; if they wear ſandals, they tye them in ſuch a manner that the heel may come in the place of the toes. When they purloin a conſiderable number of oxen or ſheep, they ſeparate them into ſmall parcels with guides to each, after which they take different ways, and though purſued, ſecure by this means the major part of their prey.

Under the name of *Boſhis-men*, are likewiſe confounded a nation different from the *Hottentots*; who, though they uſe the ſame kind of clucking, have a particular kind of pronunciation, and terms very different from the reſt. In ſome cantons theſe are called *Chineſe Hottentots*, becauſe their complection reſembles the Chineſe ſeen at the Cape; like them too they are of a middling ſtature.

From the great affinity that ſubſiſts

between the language of theſe, and the great and leſſer *Namaquais*, (whom I ſhall hereafter ſpeak of), I believe them to be a particular race of *Hottentots*; and though the coloniſts rank the former under the general denomination of *Boſhis-men*, it is certain that the ſavages of the deſert, who have no communication with the Dutch ſettlements, diſtinguiſh them by the name of *Houſwaana*.

Whatever name may be given to this people, they formerly inhabited *Cambedo*, the *Bocke-Veld*, and the *Rogge-Veld*; but the uſurpation of the whites, to whom, like the other ſavages, they have fallen victims, obliged them to ſeek refuge at a diſtance from their country, inhabiting at this time the vaſt ſpace that lies between *Caffraria* and the country of the great *Namaquais*.

Of all the nations who have been ill treated

treated by the inſatiable avarice of the Europeans, none remember their wrongs with ſo much bitterneſs; the colour, nay the very name of a white, inſpiring horror. Never will they forget the treachery of the coloniſts, or the infamous return made to the many ſignal ſervices they had rendered them; and ſuch is the reſentment of this people, that the terrible cry of *vengeance* is ever in their mouths; but though they are perpetually on the watch to gratify it, no fit opportunity has hitherto offered, having failed in every attempt. I ſhall give a more particular account of the *Houſwaana*, in that part of my travels, when paſſing the tropic, I viſited their *Hoords*.

Having explored, as far as was conſiſtent with my ſafety, the moſt conſpicuous eminences of *Sneuwbergen*, I determined to take a final leave of this dreary country. My men ſolicited me warmly to croſs the

*Carouw* before the exceſſive heats had dried up the ſmall portion of ſtagnant water that might poſſibly yet remain there, and while any paſture was to be found for our cattle, who had ſuffered conſiderably already from the heat of the ſeaſon.

Whether fatigue, or other projects had diminiſhed my ardour for theſe reſearches; or that buſy remembrance regained its empire over my imagination, which had ſo long been filled with a perpetual ſucceſſion of the greateſt novelties, I no longer found the ſame amuſement in my travels as formerly, and ardently wiſhed to join my friends: on the ſecond of February, therefore, I continued my journey, directing our ſteps ſouth-ſouth-weſt, accompanied by a part of the *Hoord*, who helped us to croſs the river *Jubers*, at about three leagues diſtance, which we judged muſt be conſiderably ſwelled by the late rains. We were already thinking

of

of rafts, but our conductors prevented that labour, by ſhewing us a ſhallow about half a league further down.

I went firſt to examine it, and judged (after having tried the depth with my horſe) that by taking the precaution of raiſing the cheſts and other lading of my waggons about eight or ten inches, by means of branches, buſhes, &c. we might croſs without danger of wetting my collection. This expedient was put in immediate execution, and had the deſired effect; it is true we were greatly aſſiſted by our companions in this opperation, who croſſed the river and paſſed the night with us, helping, next morning, to replace our effects; which ſervice I did not fail to reward.

I found in this canton a prodigious number of the *green-gilt cuckows*, that I have before ſpoken of, and ſeveral ſpecies of birds

birds new to me, which I took care to add to my collection. The ſame day we arrived at a ſecond river, which had no name; I therefore called it after my reſpectable friend Mr. Boers.

We now entered the dry and ſteril plains of *Carouw*. The earth, or rather ſand, only bounded one way by the horizon, is covered with rank unwholſome weeds, and preſents the mind with an idea of famine and deſolation: here and there a few ſcattered ſpots of graſs ſprung up reluctantly, offering our cattle a ſcanty ſubſiſtence; the other ſides are bounded by ſteep and craggy rocks, whoſe appearance is not leſs dreary.

CHAP.

# CHAPTER XX.

THE AUTHOR ARRIVES AT THE RIVER SONDAG—DISCHARGES ONE OF HIS ATTENDANTS—ENTERS CAMBEDO—MEETS WITH A BOSHIS-MAN—JOURNEY CONTINUED.

ON the fourth, after five hours march, we gained the banks of the river *Vogel*, which diſcharges itſelf into the *Sondag*. Our inconveniences augmented with the heat, which became every day more intenſe, though I ſtill continued my uſual amuſements, whenever leiſure would permit; and, on my way, ſhot a *cane-petiere*, of a different ſpecies from any I had ſeen before.

Early

Early the next day we reached the river *Sondag*, which offered an agreeable retreat that ſeemed to reanimate our ſinking ſpirits. Superb avenues of the *mimoſa* in full bloom preſented themſelves in every direction to the delighted eye, and ſcattered the moſt delicious perfumes. The multitude of curious birds and inſects I found about this ſpot, detained me here till the eighth.

Notwithſtanding the quantity of pins I had brought from the Cape, I now experienced a want of that article in preſerving my inſects; but a ſudden idea ſtruck me, that I could ſubſtitute in the place of them the ſmall thorns of the *mimoſa*; a contrivance that anſwered perfectly well.

After quitting the *Sondag*, we met fifteen *Hottentots* on the borders of *Swart-river*; theſe had retired from *Cambedo*, and

and were on their way to *Sneuwberg*, deſinging to join the *Hoord* we had left there. They aſſured me they were forced to take this ſtep by formidable troops of *Boſhis-men*, who ſeized, throughout *Cambedo*, all ammunition, arms and property; deſtroying every thing that oppoſed them, and rendering the face of the country a ſcene of blood and deveſtation.

Nothing could be more vexatious to me than this diſagreeable, unexpected news, which alarmed all my people, who immediately gave into their former fears. Perſuaded that tedious perſuaſions and remonſtrances would only the more bewilder their weak imaginations, I inſtantly gave orders to continue our way. Conſultations were already held among them about returning back,—it was a moment in which my authority could hardly be recollected. The braveſt of my men, who would have followed me through any danger,

ger, happily perſuaded the reſt; but I had particularly obſerved that *Slinger* (who at *Koks-Kraal* had given me ſo much reaſon to complain of his conduct) was the moſt refractory; I therefore determined, for the firſt time, to make an example of him, which I hoped would have a ſalutary effect on his weak companions.

In the evening we encamped on the river *Cambedo*, which takes its name from the country it croſſes. I now ordered *Slinger* inſtantly to quit the caravan, reproaching him with being the fomentor of all the troubles and fears that had prevented my people from attending me into *Caffraria*, and having, by that means, conſtrained me to relinquiſh the moſt laudable of my deſigns for want of the aſſiſtance neceſſary to bring them to a happy concluſion. I paid the wages we had agreed on, and ordered his effects,

with

with a quantity of proviſions, to be given him; after which, I threatened to purſue him as a wild beaſt ſhould he ever dare to appear among us. The vehemence with which I ſpoke, ſtruck him with ſuch conſternation, that he haſtily caught up his bag and departed.

My people conjectured he would either go to the neareſt habitation of the coloniſts, or join the *Hottentots* we met in the morning. I had expected he would make ſome excuſes, or that his comrades would intercede for him, but was very happy to find myſelf miſtaken in this particular, and found that this well-timed ſeverity had the deſired effect for the reſt of my journey.

On the ninth of February, I quitted the river *Cambedo*. Several of my oxen were attacked with *klauw-ſikte*, which rendered their travelling very painful: reſt and

and refreſhment being the only remedy that could reſtore them, I fixed my camp near the river, on a plain ſurrounded by *mimoſa* trees, deſigning to remain there ſome days.

I had no occaſion to deſire my people to be upon their guard, they feared the *Boſhis-men* too much to need any ſuch injunction; eſpecially as we were now in the canton which we had been informed theſe robbers ſo much infeſted.

Our proviſions ran ſhort, we had no large game, and as I wiſhed to procure ſome to ſalt, I went ſeveral times to a good diſtance from the camp in ſearch of it.

One day, warm in the purſuit of an *elk*, I ſtrayed a conſiderable way, followed by one of my beſt markſmen on foot. On paſſing a thicket of *mimoſa* trees, we ſtumbled

ſtumbled ſuddenly on a *Hottentot*, who was ſeeking the chryſalis of ants, (which is a favourite dainty among theſe ſavages); he no ſooner ſaw us than he caught up his bow and quiver, and fled with amazing ſwiftneſs; but giving the reins to my horſe, I preſently overtook him.

From his flight and terror, I judged him to have been a *Boſhis-man*; his life was in my hands, and I might have puniſhed the inexcuſable villany of belonging to ſuch a ſet of wretches; but they had never yet given me any cauſe of complaint, and I hoped to profit by the encounter, in procuring ſome freſh information.

He ſoon perceived by my manner that I had no intention of doing him any injury, and after ſome queſtions, relative to the ſituation in which we found him, which he anſwered trembling with apprehenſion, he became a little more compoſed. I complained of the ſcarcity of game, and

he informed me of the cantons where I might procure it in abundance. I then ordered my *Hottentot* (who had now joined us) to make him a preſent of ſome part of his tobacco; and, after wiſhing him a greater ſhare of moderation and probity, I rode away. My *Hottentot* remained behind ſome minutes to light his pipe, and finiſh their converſation. I had hardly got fifty paces, before I heard my man calling after me in a loud and frighted accent. I returned inſtantly, and found my poor fellow ſtruggling with the *Boſhisman*, who, armed with an arrow, was uſing his utmoſt efforts to wound him in the head; the face of my man being already covered with blood.

Tranſported with rage, I leaped from my horſe, and at one blow, with the but end of my muſket, ſtretched him ſenſeleſs on the earth, on which my *Hottentot* caught up his weapon, and immediately diſpatched

diſpatched this traitorous enemy. My man was greately alarmed, dreading the effect of poiſon.

I found the villain had taken an opportunity to throw an arrow at my man the very moment they were parting; he had received the wound in his noſe, which, at firſt, I thought dangerous; but fortunately it only proved to be ſuperficial, the iron head, which is never poiſoned, having only entered the wound. I waſhed it carefully, endeavouring to comfort him with an aſſurance that it was not mortal. I always carried in my pocket a ſmall bottle of *volatil alkali*, which had been given me by Mr. Percheron, on my departure from the Cape, to uſe as an antidote againſt the effects of venom. I tore off a piece of my ſhirt, which, dipping in this liquid, I applied to the wound; but all my aſſurances could not pacify the poor fellow, who obſtinately attributed to the poiſon, the pain occaſioned by the dreſſing.

It was very fortunate for me that he had not been killed on the ſpot, as the aſſaſſin, armed with his gun, which he would have ſeized immediately, might have watched an opportunity (by coming round ſome by-way, and taking me unawares) to have diſpatched me likewiſe.

I took poſſeſſion of the bow and arrows of the traitor, and we haſtened to rejoin the camp.

This adventure ſpread univerſal alarm; my *Hottentot* was perſuaded he ſhould not live till the next day; and, by his melancholy complaint, added to the general conſternation, in vain did I attempt to tranquiliſe them, being all perſuaded that the wounded man would not ſurvive the night. Notwithſtanding their predictions, he paſſed it very ſafely, and the pain leſtening gradually, he began to think the worſt was over.

His

His comrades were much ſurpriſed in the morning to find him alive; they were now in better ſpirits, recovered the uſe of their tongues, and deſcanted a hundred different ways on what had happened; however, they all coincided in thinking it was particularly fortunate that the wretch was killed, for had he eſcaped, he would probably have dogged us through the thickets, and by-ways, and having diſcovered our retreat, he and his infamous companions might have deſcended in numbers, and, falling on us unexpectedly, maſſacred the whole caravan.

The different conjectures of the *Hottentots* amuſed, and ſometimes intereſted me. I concluded that in time they might be familiariſed with danger, and was glad they had this opportunity of comtemplating it nearly; as I knew of no obſtacle more formidable to ſuch enterpriſes as we were engaged in, than the vain terrors of imagination.

We continued our journey the next morning; in the courſe of the day I amuſed myſelf by firing my piece to ſtart game. A female oſtrich roſe from her neſt, which was the largeſt I had ever ſeen, containing thirty two eggs; twelve more being diſtributed at ſome diſtance, each in a little cavity by itſelf.

I could not conceive that one female could cover ſo many: they were of an unequal ſize, and, on examination, I found that nine of them were much leſs than the neſt. This peculiarity intereſted me, and I ordered the oxen to be unyoked at about a quarter of a league diſtance from the reſt; I then concealed myſelf in a thicket, from whence I could overlook the place, and yet remain within gun-ſhot.

I had not watched long before the female returned and ſat on the eggs. During the reſt of the day, (which I paſſed in the thicket),

thicket), three more came to the ſame neſt, covering it alternately, each continued ſitting for the ſpace of a quarter of an hour, and then gave place to another, who, while waiting, ſat cloſe by the ſide of her it was to ſucceed: a circumſtance which made me conjecture that in cold or rainy nights they ſit by pairs, or perhaps more. The ſun was almoſt down; the male bird approached, (theſe equally with the females aſſiſt in hatching the eggs), I inſtantly ſhot him, but the report of my gun ſcared the others, who in their fright broke ſeveral of them. I now drew near, and ſaw with regret that the young *oſtriches* were juſt ready to quit the ſhells, being perfectly covered with down. The male I had ſhot, had not a ſingle good white feather, all being ſpoiled and dirty. I chooſe ſome black ones, which appeared the beſt, and left the place, ſending ſome of my *Hottentots* to fetch the thirteen diſperſed eggs, charging them not to touch

the others, as I was curious to learn whether the females would return in the night. I roſe, and went to the neſt at day-break, but found only ſome ſcattered ſhells remaining which plainly denoted that I had prepared a feaſt for the *jackals*; or perhaps, for the *hyæna*.

This particularity of female *oſtriches* aſſiſting each other for the incubation of the ſame neſt, is I think calculated to awaken the attention of the naturaliſts; and not being a general rule, proves that circumſtances ſometimes determine the actions of theſe creatures, regulate their cuſtoms, and ſtrengthen their natural inſtinct, by giving them a knowledge not generally beſtowed; for is it not probable, that they may aſſociate to be the more powerful, and better able to defend their young?

In returning to the camp, my dogs ſtarted

ſtarted a hare, which they purſued; I followed on full gallop, and ſaw it eſcape into one of the little cavities of a hillock. I was determined to find it, therefore ſtopped up the hole by which it had entered. We dug away the mould and ſtones that compoſed this elevation; but how can I paint my aſtoniſhment, when, on its removal, I found it was a *Hottentot* tomb, and my hare ſquatted in a ſkeleton! I took it alive, but, animated by a ſpirit of generoſity, which ſcorned the death of this poor animal otherwiſe than by the chace, I took an opportunity, when my dogs were employed, to ſet it at liberty. This action was interpreted by my *Hottentots* as a very honourable one; I did not try to undeceive them: they imagined, I had liberated the hare, becauſe the aſylum of the dead had appeared too ſacred to be infringed, and that it was a reſpect I paid to the grave of one of their countrymen.

We

We covered the ſkeleton, and continued our way.

During this time our huntſmen had killed four *gnous*, the ſalting of which occupied us for three days.

On the ſixteenth, we reached the plantation of two free negroes, who were brothers; one of whom was married to a young mulatto. I was received by theſe friendly people with tranſports of joy, offering me every thing that was in their power to beſtow. How can I confeſs, that my heart, overwhelmed with a thouſand different ſentiments, received with coldneſs their friendſhip, and tender ſolicitude! I began again to recognize the manners of the world; I was again entering ſociety; I ſaw incloſures, furniture, poſſeſſions, order, maſters; in ſhort, I was in a houſe, and ſo much eaſe incom-

moded me. I walked ſeveral times round it, my eyes wandering on all ſides to diſcern the objects I had left behind, I appeared bereft of all! The torrents, mountains, majeſtic foreſts; the impaſſable woods, the *Hoords* of ſavages and their charming huts, had diſappeared!—How much did I regret even the wild beaſts, that my fancy pictured at this moment, with friendly diſpoſitions towards me! I know not whether caprices of this kind are common to other men, but the more I think of them, the more I am convinced they are the genuine effects of nature. Sovereign charm of liberty! invincible power, that ſhall only periſh with my exiſtence! how didſt thou transform into pleaſures the moſt cruel fatigues; into amuſement the greateſt danger; into beautiful ſcenes the darkeſt proſpects; ſtrewing my path with the flowers of repoſe and joy!

With

With theſe negroes I eat the firſt bread I had taſted for a year; and I found my inclination for it was almoſt loſt. I only purpoſed ſtaying here for a day, but remained three. We had a large barren country to travel through, ſome prodigious mountains to croſs, and many difficulties to ſurmount, in the deſert of *Cambedo*, whoſe melancholy aſpect every way preſented itſelf. Inſtead of the beautiful verdure and natural gardens of *Pampoen-Kraal*, a mingled proſpect of grey, red, and yellow rocks, ſands and ſtones.

In drawing near habitations I was leſs expoſed to danger; but in adhering to my former ideas, I promiſed myſelf moſt enjoyment; and, if I except the place where I now ſtopped, I followed my plan as exactly on my return, as on my departure. I procured from theſe friendly brothers a large proviſion of biſcuit, which was eſſentially ſervicable to us; I gave them in exchange

exchange powder, lead, and gun-flints, all valuable articles, which they had been without ſome time; though ſo neceſſary in a plantation, to keep of the *Boſhismen*, and defend their flocks. The gratitude of theſe people was ſo lively that they thought I could never be ſufficiently requited, for the ſupply I had furniſhed them with.

CHAP-

# CHAPTER XXI.

JOURNEY CONTINUED—DISTRESSED FOR WANT OF WATER—THE AUTHOR ARRIVES AT HIS FRIEND SLABERS—RECEIVES A MESSAGE FROM MR. BOERS—RETURNS TO THE CAPE.

ON the nineteenth, at four o'clock in the afternoon, we continued our journey, travelling two days without meeting with a drop of water, and almoſt ſinking from the extreme heat of the ſun; I had taken the precaution to fill ſome jars at the dwelling of the two brothers, notwithſtanding this we were reduced to an allowance, which had happened more than once before on my journey.

The

The twenty-firſt, we croſſed the bed of the river *Kriga*, which was dry. I here met with two inhabitants of *Cambedo*, who were returning from the Cape to their habitations. It was more than a year ſince I had received any news from the town; from them I learnt that, by the aſſiſtance of France, the Cape had been preſerved from an Engliſh invaſion, and ſtill remained under the Dutch government. The pleaſure this news gave me was counterbalanced by an account of the indiſpoſition of my benefactor, who, the travellers aſſured me, they had left in the moſt dangerous ſtate at the hot baths, which is the laſt reſource of African invalids. This information ſpread bitterneſs and diſtaſte throughout the reſt of my journey.

I wiſhed to haſten my march, willing to rejoin a friend who was ſo deſervingly dear to me, but the fear of finding him languiſhing

guiſhing in illneſs, empoiſoned the pleaſure I had promiſed myſelf in our meeting. The coloniſts informed me I muſt ſuffer great inconvenience by the way from the drought, as I had ſo large a number of cattle, and there was no reſource but the ſtorms of rain which might chance to fall; they likewiſe told me, that the *Boſhismen* infeſted the country, and had taken from them thirty-two oxen, and killed the drivers, at the paſſage of the *Black-river*.

This news did not prevent me from continuing my journey; for, after the example of ſeverity I had been obliged to make, my people did not heſitate; and, I believe, would have braved all the banditties of *Cambedo* had I required it; but I was not willing to expoſe myſelf raſhly, or to travel in the night, as that would have deprived us of all advantage. The greater part of my oxen were uſeleſs from the diſorder of the hoof, and not being able

to

to relieve thoſe who were healthy, I made them ſet off before us with a ſtrong guard, that they might not retard our march.

Arrived at the ſource of *Kriga-fontyn*, our oxen had as much water as was neceſſary, but it was ſo brackiſh that the *Hottentots* who drank of it were attacked with violent cholics. As I was ſounding the bottom, and examining whether the water might not cauſe us yet greater ills, I was ſurpriſed to ſee *Kees*, who was firſt every where, draw out a crab of three or four inches in diameter; this aſtoniſhed me the more as the fountain was in a rock without any apparent outlet. My monkey appeared to eat his crab with ſo much pleaſure, that I cauſed thirty to be taken, which I found very good when dreſſed.—Four or five ſhot procured me more than forty *gelinottes*, (water-quails), of a very fine ſpecies, who frequently come to the banks by thouſands. The *Hottentots* of

the colonies call them *perdrix Namaquais*, (Namaquai partridges); in the rainy ſeaſon they all depart towards the tropic.

After we had quitted the fountain we found nothing but rank weeds, and locuſts; all was a ſcene of deſolation, four of my oxen being unable to follow remained on the ſpot, my dogs were obliged to be put into the waggon, all halting and dragging after us with difficulty; their feet being worn to the quick, I cauſed them to be greaſed that they might lick them. My horſes were afflicted with the ſame malady as my oxen; I therefore had little boots, or bags made for them, which I faſtened under the tarſus. I would have done the ſame by the oxen, but they were intractable and would not willingly have ſubmitted; neither had we fat or ſkins ſufficient, for the wheels of my waggons, which had not been greaſed ſome time, creaked in turning like ſo many keſtrils,

Many

Many rivers and fountains on which we much depended had deceived our hopes, and our animals were reduced to put their noſes to the ground and lick the earth were it appeared damp; deprived of all healthy graſs, they had no food but rank weeds, which cauſed them excruciating pains, and reduced them to ſkeletons.

This deſperate ſituation laſted till the night of the twenty-fourth; we had juſt croſſed the *Black-river*, which was dry alſo, and were going to unyoke, when diſcovered a flock of ſheep; I ran to the keeper who informed me he belonged to a coloniſt, whoſe habitation was a ſhort league off; we immediately took the road to it, encamping near a lake where we had the ſatisfaction of finding plenty of water. This plantation belonged to *Adam Robenhymer*, and was called *Kweec-Valey*. I received many civilities from the maſter of the houſe, and all the family, which

conſiſted of only two daughters.—The eldeſt *Dina Sagrias de Beer*, who belonged to the mother by a firſt marriage, was one of the moſt beautiful Africans I had ever ſeen. My good hoſts preſſed me to remain with them ſome days, particularly the enchanting Dina invited me with ſo much innocent ſweetneſs, that it was impoſſible to reſiſt, and I conſented to ſtay three days, notwithſtanding I returned each night to the camp, the place where I now was, making it neceſſary to maintain order; beſides, I was ſo accuſtomed to my hard mattraſs, that a ſoft bed would rather have incommoded, than given me pleaſure.

This agreeable halt was very uſeful to my cattle, who, prematurely old by miſery and fatigue, were ſo weak that I feared each moment they would be unable to draw my waggons; but this ſtoppage reanimated them. The ſituation, on many accounts,

accounts, was convenient, offering to my men as well as cattle abundant help toward the re-eſtabliſhment of their health. I would willingly have remained here ſome time longer, but each moment preſented to my fancy the neceſſity of a ſpeedy return to the Cape, and I was obliged once more to tear myſelf from ſo many enchanting circumſtances, and depart. Charming Dina had learned from my people, that the biſcuits I procured from the negroe brothers were almoſt expended, ſhe, therefore, deſired me to accept of a ſmall quantity which ſhe had made herſelf.

The firſt of March I quitted my amiable hoſts about five o'clock in the evening, and took the way towards the *Gamka* or *Leuw-river*, (Lion's river), where we arrived at nine o'clock and encamped. Formerly the lions were very common near this river, as were alſo the *gazells*;

but, ſince the inhabitants have drawn nearer that way, the *gazells* are become ſcarce, conſequently the lions are ſo likewiſe.

I had been informed at *Kweec Valey*, that in the environs of this ſpot were formidable gangs of *Boſhis-men*, prudence therefore prevented my advancing further this firſt night; I had alſo been told, that after paſſing the *Gamka*, I ſhould not find a drop of water till I came to the *Buffalos-river*, (a diſtance of twenty-five leagues) and that it was neceſſary if we would avoid periſhing with drought, to perform the journey in two days; to travel in the heat of the day was impoſſible, I therefore determined to ſtop two days near the lions river to ſtrengthen and repoſe my cattle, and on the evening of the ſecond day, throwing of all fear, to continue our journey. I took the precaution of placing all my caravan between the waggons, which

which ſerved as fore and rear guard: two days, or rather two nights forced march, brought us to the banks of the wiſhed for river. We did not neglect during the night to fire our pieces at intervals of ſix minutes each, and from time to time to give water to our horſes from the jars, as they were almoſt overcome with heat and fatigue. My cattle had neither eat nor drank, they were panting, and appeared every moment ready to lay down on the ſpot; and though it was night, for half an hour before we reached the *Buffalos-river*, the relays and other beaſts that marched at liberty, having ſcented the water, began running in the greateſt diſorder; thoſe that drew the waggons now took freſh courage, and went on briſkly, but had it not been for the attention of my *Hottentots* who cut the traces of the moſt refractory one, my waggons muſt have been overſet in the river. We fol-

lowed the example of our cattle, and bathing made us forget our fatigues.

When our fires were lighted, part of our cattle rejoined us; I was uneaſy on account of the reſt though we heard them among the buſhes that ſurrounded us, doubtleſs ſeeking ſomething to eat. At day-break they all returned except two, whom we never found; our he-goat likewiſe wandered, but returned in the courſe of the day.

On awaking in the morning I was extremely ſurpriſed to find myſelf in a charming country which the darkneſs of the night had prevented my diſcovering. The river was not wide, but the depth and quantity of its water gave a delicious freſhneſs to the air, running in numberleſs windings, and the borders covered with verdure; it was a long time ſince I had met

met with ſo agreeable a ſpot, the cries of prodigious quantities of partridges, and water-quail, were contraſted by that of a ſpecies of ducks, herons, brown ſtorks, and flamingos, with which the river was covered. All my people entreated me earneſtly to ſtop here ſome days; I was eaſily prevailed on, and pleaſed the propoſal came from them. It was one of thoſe agreeable ſituations that prove the poets are not always above nature and truth in their deſcriptions. The place where we had paſſed the night was, notwithſtanding, unfavourable, ſome large rocks ſheltering it too much, and facilitating a ſurpriſe from the enemy; in conſequence of this, we conducted our waggons and baggage to the middle of a ſmall plain, to which the winding of the river gave the form of peninſula, and there fixed our camp.

We had now travelled eighty leagues ſince we left the plantation of the negroe brothers,

brothers, an idea may be formed of what we ſuffered in ſo long a march, and how ſervicable the ſheep were I had procured from the *Hottentots* of *Sneuwberg*, ſince which time we had met with no game, nor a ſingle lake pure enough to be uſed without precaution; all that we had procured being only drinkable when boiled with tea or coffee, to deſtroy and diſguiſe its malignant and nauciating qualities.

The delightful ſituation and plenty we enjoyed were not the only motives that detained me on the banks of the *Buffaloes-river*, where I remained till the fourteenth, which time was employed in repairing my waggons. They had given me uneaſineſs ſome time, being ſhattered with the rough roads, and ſhrunk with the ſun till they would hardly hold together; the wheels particularly wanted repair, the ſpokes being looſe in the nave; I had them ſoaked in water ſome time before we attempted to mend them.

I took

I took a review of my collection, which was in ſome diſorder, my birds being ſtowed in the cheſts that had contained my tea, coffee, and ſugar. As we ſhould ſoon arrive more into the heart of the colonies, where I was determined not to ſtop a ſingle moment that I could avoid, I purpoſed to travel either by day or night as might be moſt convenient, being perſuaded we had nothing to fear from the *Boſhis-men.*

On the fourteenth, we ſet off at five o'clock in the evening, and marched till midnight, then halting at *Matjes-fontein*, the ſky was over-caſt and threatened a ſtorm, which, however, we eſcaped. The next day we paſſed *Wet-Waater* and ſtopped at *Conſtapel*; a very agreeable ſituation, which a ſcarcity of water forced the coloniſts to abandon.

Though the ſeaſon was far advanced, the

the ſultry weather continued, and we were forced to remain inactive during the extreme heat of the day, which incommoded us the more as we had no ſhade to intercept the ſcorching rays of the ſun.—The weather prevented our hunting, neither had we any appetite for freſh or ſalt meat; my *Hottentots* ſlept during the day; I lived on the biſcuits preſented me by Dina, ſoaking them in goat's milk, which I always took with pleaſure; and would recommend all travellers, who may undertake ſimilar journeys, to procure a number of thoſe uſeful animals, who attach themſelves to man, follow without trouble, and need no care; furniſhing him each day with agreeable and refreſhing nouriſhment; their wants are eaſily ſupplied, ſuffering drought a long time without their milk failing.

On the ſixteenth and ſeventeenth, after croſſing *Touws-river*, at ſix leagues diſtance

tance, near *Verkeerde-Valey*, we found a conſiderable lake, with a ſmall plantation, the maſter of which was abſent, and had left ſome *Hottentots* to look after it. I here ſaw a coloniſt who had lately left the Cape, he eaſed my heart from a load that had long oppreſſed it, by informing me, that Mr. Boers's health was re-eſtabliſhed, and that he was returned to Cape-town.

I here met with ſeveral ſorts of birds, among others ſome moor-hens like thoſe of Europe. The neighbourhood of the lake furniſhed us with ſo many woodcocks, that we made them our ordinary food.

There was a great many hogs in the plantation; I bought one, but was obliged to ſhoot it among the ruſhes, for as I have before obſerved, from the manner of breeding them, they become wild. I likewiſe procured ſome flour, to treat my people with

with bread, which they had not taſted ſince our departure: *Klaas*'s wife prepared it very well. I quitted *Verkeerde Valey* on the twenty-firſt, and was now entering into another country, the *Boke-Veld*, (plain of *ſpring-bock*) they might doubtleſs be found there ſome time ago, but at preſent are not to be ſeen in any part of it. On the adjoining hills we diſcovered ſeveral habitations which we tried in vain to avoid, the farther we continued, the more frequent they became. We paſſed that of *Jan Pinar*, I reſiſted his entreaties to refreſh myſelf, and continued my way; all the inhabitants, whether whites, *Hottentots*, or negroes, ran to ſee us unharneſs our cattle when we halted.

My beard appeared extraordinary in a country where there is neither capuchin, or jew; frightened the women, and made the children run away. I had enough to do to anſwer queſtions till eleven o'clock

at

at night, when I retired three leagues further into a peaceful uninhabited ſpot; but the news of my return had ſpread, and at day-break twenty inhabitants of different ſettlements gathered round my camp, ſo that take what road I would, I could not eſcape. They took pleaſure in reciting a thouſand abſurdities on my account, each queſtion they aſked appearing more ridiculous than the laſt; publiſhing that my waggons were loaded with gold duſt, and precious ſtones, found in rivers and unknown rocks. One of the credulous countrymen intreated me to ſhew him a precious ſtone, ſuperior to the diamond, and large as an egg, which I had found on the head of an enormous ſerpent I had killed. I repeat this to juſtify what I have before advanced of the ſtupid love of the marvellous which the coloniſts give into.

It was my intention to have ſtayed quietly

quietly in the place I was till towards night, but the crowd increaſing every minute, I became impatient and departed immediately. It was in vain I attempted to paſs three or four habitations in the road unnoticed, importunity followed me, and I had no reſource but to profit by the darkneſs, and hide myſelf like an out-law, at the foot of an enormous chain of mountains called *Cloof*, on the limits of another country, named the *Rooye-ſand*.

This mountain appeared to me as an immenſe curtain, which misfortune had ſpread before me; and, as a freſh obſtacle to redouble my vexations, it was neceſſary to croſs it, or take a very long circuit, with which I was unacquainted: I had no longer the ardour I ſhewed on my firſt departure, nor the indefatigable courage which inſpired me with impatience to take firſt poſſeſſion of an unknown and curious country. I was now by turns depreſſed

by

by obſtacles, and dragged forward by friendſhip; at length I determined to climb the mountain, the ſteeps and hollows of which appeared fearful; it is notwithſtanding the ordinary road of the coloniſts of that quarter, who rather run the riſk and danger of over-turning their carriages, than they will unite to make a proper road, or at leaſt to render it more paſſable,—a ſtriking proof of their indolence.

I took this trouble on myſelf, employing all the day of the twenty-fourth in cauſing branches to be cut to fill up the hollows, and in covering them with earth, ſtones, and ſand; our labour ſucceeded; and on the twenty-fifth, in four hours, thanks to our neceſſary precaution, and the trouble my men had willingly taken, we paſſed the frightful precipice with little damage, being the laſt we had to encounter: this is called *Moſter-hoek*.

We encamped at the bottom of the oppoſite ſide of the mountain, and the next day ſtopped at the entrance of *Roye-ſand*, near the ruins of a plantation which appeared to have been long abandoned.

I think this canton improperly called *Roye-ſand*, (Red-ſand), as I never ſaw any of that colour; remarking, on the contrary, that it was particularly yellow.

This country produces great quantities of corn; the harveſt every where preſenting the moſt pleaſing aſſurances of plenty; while various proſpects, enriched with plantations that vie with each other in the charms of ſituation, are continually affording a pleaſing variety, which ſtrikes the eye with ſome new charm. Was it, having been accuſtomed for ſixteen months to the more majeſtic ſcenes of uncultivated nature, and the ſcattered and frequently dreary abodes of ſavages, contraſted

traſted with the order and abundance which now preſented themſelves, that made a lively and powerful impreſſion on my mind?— What ever might be the cauſe, my admiration of this charming country was without bounds.

All the chimerical and romantic ideas I had nouriſhed, all the ſorrows I had experienced on quitting the ſavages, began to give way to calm reaſon; which whiſpered that, not born for an errant precarious life, I had obligations to fulfil, and other beings to cheriſh; the idea gained ſtrength, and I ſighed on a recapitulation of my former pleaſures and cuſtoms. Above all, friendſhip decorated in the moſt delightful form, as it exiſts in delicate feeling ſouls, appeared to call me with open arms. Certain of finding Mr. Boers at the Cape, each ſtep that brought me nearer inſpired me with rapture, which my people ſincerely partook. I was now

only occupied with the pleaſure of ſeeing my friends, and embracing thoſe whom my heart particularly diſtinguiſhed by that title.

On the twenty-ſixth, after eſcaping (if I may uſe the expreſſion) ſix habitations which were in the road, I croſſed the *Breede-river*, (Wide river), and a league further the *Waater-Val*, (Waterfall), and paſſed ſome habitations, whoſe proprietors had, doubtleſs, long expected me at the paſſage, for they followed me like a curious beaſt, nor quitted me till their curioſity was fully ſatisfied. I paſſed the *Roye-ſand-Kloof*, (Valley of red ſand), the *Klein-berg-river*, (the little river of the mountains), and on the twenty-ſeventh, arrived at *Swart-land*. I ordered my horſes, which I had not rode ſome time, to be ſaddled, and followed by my faithful *Klaas*, leaving the curious ſpectators about our waggons, went on before, and enjoyed

enjoyed that very night, the pleaſure of reaching the habitation of my hoſt, the good *Slaber*, who had received me ſo generouſly two years before, on my dreadful misfortune at the bay of *Saldanha*.

I cannot expreſs the joy and ſurpriſe my arrival cauſed in this honeſt family; I was unexpected; my perſon was altered; the relations they had received at the Cape of the dangers I had encountered having rendered my death ſo probable, that they were at firſt almoſt afraid of my approach. The women particularly made war againſt my beard; for ſome time it had been uſeleſs, conſequently inconvenient; *Mitje Slaber*, the youngeſt daughter of my hoſt, profered to rid me of it; I placed myſelf at her feet, offering my beard in ſacrifice.

I diſpatched *Klaas* to Mr. Boers immediately, to inform him of my return, ſending him at the ſame time two ſmall

*ſteen-bock*, and ſome partridges I had ſhot by the way. The next day I received the congratulations of my friend, and two of his beſt horſes, with an earneſt deſire to return to the Cape as ſpeedily as poſſible.

My people, whom I had left with the waggons, arrived the ſame day; the hour of ſeparation approached, and we mutually forgot our former diſagreements; ſome ſighed, others ſhed tears, nor could I retain mine. We conſoled each other with the idea of another journey, if circumſtances ſhould be favourable. I diſtributed among theſe faithful companions of my dangers, all the effects which would be of no particular ſervice to me at the town; adding, my linen, and all my cloaths, reſerving only what I had on. I entreated two of my *Hottentots* to ſtay ſome days at *Slabers* to take care of my horſes and goats, and likewiſe thoſe cattle who being ſick or uſeleſs, I ſhould leave

till

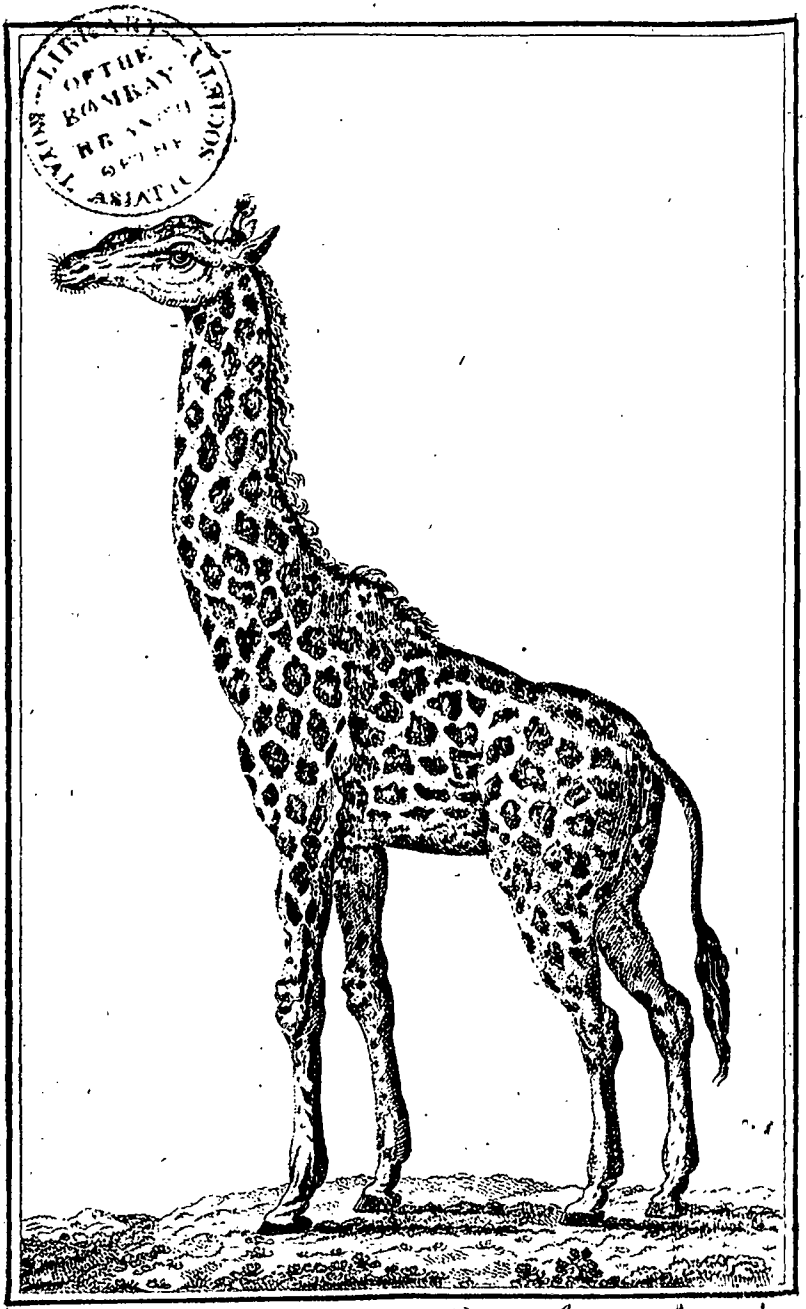
till further orders; I gave a rendezvous to the reſt at Mr. Boers's, and, attended by *Klaas* on horſeback, that ſame night reached the Cape, and enjoyed the pleaſure of claſping in my arms my benefactor and friend, whom I had feared never more to ſee.

My waggons arrived the ſecond of April, it was now I could more completely recompenſe my faithful ſervants and pay their wages, they were impatient to join their families; I held out my hand to *Klaas*, who was loath to quit me: as his *Hoord* was not ſo diſtant as thoſe of the reſt, whom I had diſcharged, I deſired him to come and ſee me often, promiſing him ever the ſame favour, confidence, and friendſhip; particularly aſſuring him, I ſhould not remain long at the Cape, and ſhould depend on him in any new enterprize: it was what he wiſhed, a hope that counterbalanced his grief. I could not

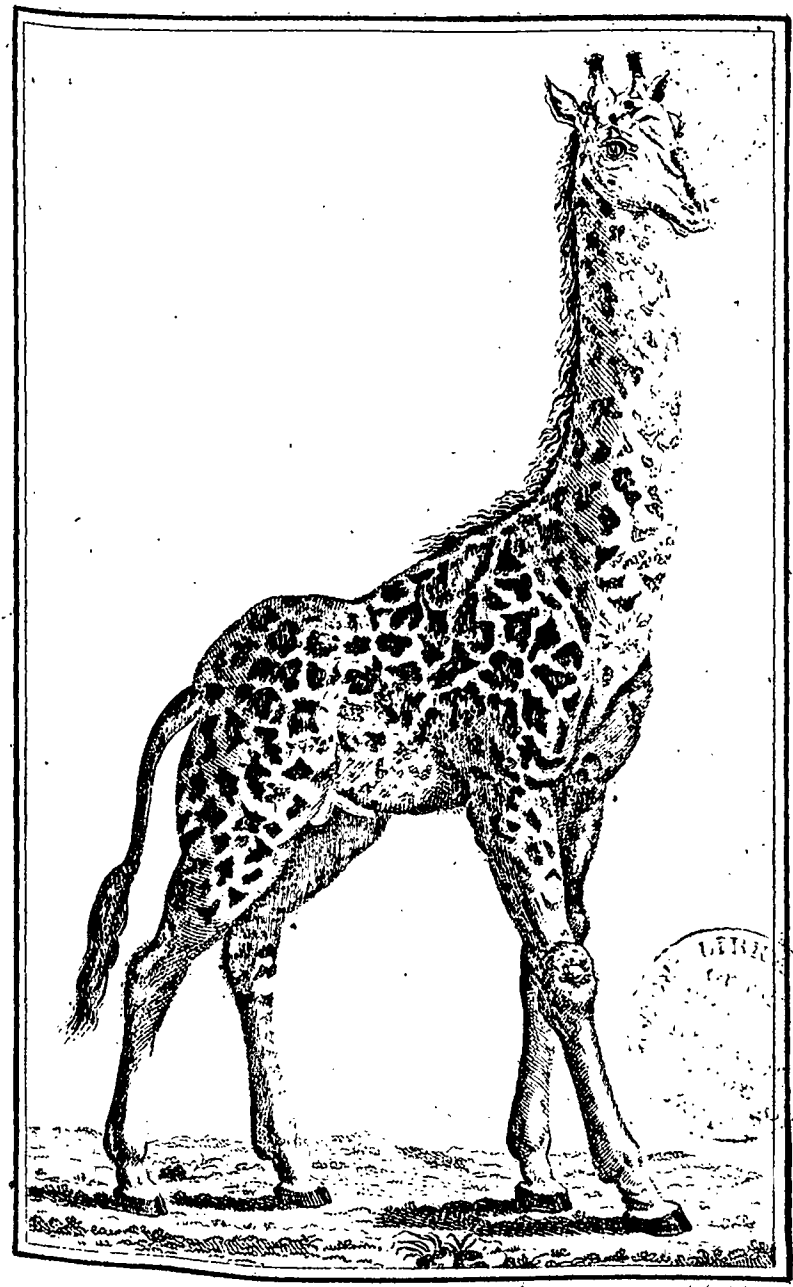
ſee him depart without an emotion and concern which even the crowds that viſited me at Mr. Boers's, could not diſpel, ſome of whom were attracted by friendſhip, but the greater number by an eager deſire to ſatisfy their ardent curioſity.

ACCOUNT

LIBRARY
OF THE
BOMBAY
BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY



*Female Giraffe.*



Male Giraffe

# ACCOUNT

## OF THE

# GIRAFES.

AS I only met with the male and female *Girafe* in my ſecond travels, it may appear irregular to have placed them at the end of this volume, but was conſtrained to it by ſolicitations and importunity I ought to regard as commands.

For an explanation to the two plates, I muſt add a ſketch of the animals they repreſent, reſerving a more particular deſcription for the place to which it naturally appertains.

The *Girafe* has been differently ſpoken of; yet, notwithſtanding the elegant and ſcientific diſſertations on the ſubject, a proper

proper idea has not been given of its configuration, manners, temper, or organization.

If, among the known quadrupeds, precedence was to be allowed from height, the *Girafe* might rank in the firſt claſs: the male, which I have in my cabinet, and from which the plate is taken, meaſured, when I ſhot it, ſixteen feet four inches, from the hoof to the end of the horns, or ſhoots; I uſe both appellations to make myſelf underſtood, though both are equally improper, the *Girafe* having neither horns nor ſhoots, but between the ears, on the higheſt part of the head, riſe, perpendicularly and parallel to each other, two parts of the ſcull, which, without any ſolution of continuity, lengthen to the height of eight or nine inches, terminating by a convexity, which is ornamented with a rim, ſeveral lines wide, of ſtreight, briſly hair.

The female is generally lower than the male;

male; that repreſented in the plate meaſuring only thirteen feet ten inches, was certainly at its full growth, as the inciſores were much worn.

From the numbers of theſe animals I have ſeen and killed, I may eſtabliſh for a certain rule, that the males are uſually about fifteen or ſixteen feet high, and the females thirteen or fourteen.

Should any one judge of the ſtrength and bulk of this animal from its height, they would be ſtrangely miſtaken, as it may be ſaid to have only neck and legs: perſons accuſtomed to the ſight of European quadrupeds, will find no proportion between a height of ſixteen feet, and a length of ſeven, from the breaſt to the tail.

Another deformity, if I may call it one, is the contraſt between the anterior and poſterior

poſterior parts; the firſt is of a conſiderable thickneſs towards the ſhoulders, but the latter ſo lank and thin, that they ſcarcely appear to belong to each other.

Travellers and naturaliſts, in ſpeaking of the *Giraſe*, agree in allowing the hind legs but half the length of the fore ones; but, had they ever ſeen the animal? if ſo, ſurely they never conſidered it attentively.

An Italian author (who certainly never ſaw it) has engraven, at Venice, in a work entitled *Deſcrizioni degli Animali*, 1771, a figure exactly chalked from thoſe accounts which have been publiſhed; an axactitude that renders it ridiculous, and may be looked on as a keen criticiſm from the Italian author, on all the deſcriptions that have been printed and repeated till the preſent time.

Among the moderns, the moſt faithful engraving is that of Doctor Allaman, from the deſign of Mr. Gordon.

Among

Among the ancients the moſt exact deſcription is that of Gilius, who ſays, "The legs of the *Giraſe* are of an equal "length, but the fore thighs are longer "than thoſe behind; ſo that the back of "the animal is ſlopped like the roof of "a houſe." If, by the fore thighs Gilius meant the omoplate or ſhoulder blade, his aſſertion is juſt, and I am of the ſame opinion.

It is not thus we read in Heliodorus, if we underſtand it is the *Giraſe* which he has ſpoken of, when he allows the head of that animal to be but double the ſize of the head of an oſtrich, or muſt conclude, that, in the lapſe of time, nature has undergone great variation in one or other of the two ſpecies.

The horns being adherent, as I have before ſaid, and a part of the ſcull can never be ſhed. They are not ſolid like thoſe of the deer, nor of a matter analogous

gous to thoſe of the ox, yet leſs are they compoſed of re-united hair, as Buffon has imagined, but ſimply of a bony ſubſtance, divided by an infinity of pores, as all bones are; the whole length of them is covered with a ſhort, thick hair, which does not at all reſemble the tufted down on thoſe of the roe-buck, or deer.

The plates placed in the works of M. de M. M. Buffon and Voſmar, are in general defective; the horns of thoſe are ended in a point, which is contrary to truth, and inſtead of concluding the main at the ſhoulder it is prolonged to the tail, a miſtake which, joined to a number of others, degrade and render uſeleſs to ſcience theſe repreſentations undeſervedly credited from the reputation of their authors.

The male and female *Giraſe* are ſpotted equally; yet, excluſive of their height, they are eaſily diſtinguiſhed from each

other; the male is of a light grey, ſpotted with a dark brown, approaching to black; the female is likewiſe grey, with ſallow-coloured ſpots, which render her not ſo marking. The young males are ſpotted like their dams, but grow darker as they advance in age and growth.

Theſe quadrupeds feed on the leaves of trees, and, in preference, on thoſe of a *mimoſa*, common in a canton which they frequent. Graſs is alſo a part of their aliment, without it being neceſſary for them to kneel down to graze or drink, as ſome have ſaid. They often lay down to ruminate or ſleep which occaſions a conſiderable calloſity in the ſternon, and, likewiſe, the knees to be crowned.

If nature had indued the *Giraſe* with an iraſible temper, it would have had much reaſon for complaint, as its means of attack and defence are very trifling; but this animal is of a peaceful and timor-

ous

ous temper, ſhuns danger, and trots ſo very quick, that, in the chace, a good horſe finds a difficulty in keeping pace with it.

It has been ſaid, that it has not ſtrength to defend itſelf; notwithſtanding, I know paſt all doubt, that, by its kick, it wearies, diſcourages, and diſtances the lion. I never ſaw them uſe their horns on any occaſion, and they might be looked on as uſeleſs, were it poſſible to doubt the wiſdow and precaution which nature knows how to employ, though ſhe does not always let us perceive her motives.

I thought it neceſſary to accompany theſe two figures, which I gave at the earneſt deſire of ſome that entreated it, by a ſlight deſcription, which may facilitate the examination; but it will be eaſily believed, that I have not ſaid every thing that is neceſſary on this extraordinary animal.

FINIS.

00085932

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 15 June, 2016